Principles and methods

### Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography





### Contents

|    | Introduction  | 4  |
|----|---|----|
|    | Symbols   | 5  |
|    | <ul> <li>Common abbreviations in<br/>chromatography</li> </ul>      | 5  |
|    | <ul> <li>Abbreviations found in product<br/>names</li> </ul>        | 5  |
| 01 | Principles of hydrophobic interaction chromatography                | 6  |
|    | <ul> <li>Hydrophobic interaction</li> </ul>                         | 8  |
|    | chromatography in theory  |    |
| 02 | Hydrophobic interaction chromatography in practice                  | 21 |
|    | Resin selection   | 22 |
|    | <ul> <li>HIC in a purification strategy<br/>(CIPP)</li> </ul>       | 23 |
|    | <ul> <li>Practical considerations for HIC<br/>separation</li> </ul> | 24 |
|    | <ul> <li>Screening for selectivity</li> </ul>                       | 25 |
|    | <ul> <li>Salt selection and buffer<br/>preparation</li> </ul>       | 30 |
|    | <ul> <li>Column and resin preparation</li> </ul>                    | 33 |
|    | <ul> <li>Sample preparation</li> </ul>                              | 34 |
|    | <ul> <li>Sample application and wash</li> </ul>                     | 35 |
|    | <ul> <li>Sample load</li> </ul>                                     | 36 |
|    | <ul> <li>Sample volume</li> </ul>                                   | 36 |
|    | Temperature   | 37 |
|    | Elution   | 38 |
|    | <ul> <li>Wash and re-equilibration</li> </ul>                       | 43 |

| <ul> <li>Analyzing results and further step</li> </ul> | ps |
|--|----|
|--|----|

• Scaling up

03

- Equipment selection
- Caring for HIC resins
- Troubleshooting

Resins for hydrophobic interaction chromatography

Capto<sup>™</sup> resins: High-flow resins with high resolution

- Purification examples
- Chemical stability
- Storage

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins

- Purification examples
- Cleaning
- Chemical stability
- Storage

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin

- Purification examples
- Cleaning
- Chemical stability
- Storage

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins

- Purification examples
- Cleaning
- Chemical stability
- Storage

| 43<br>44 | 04 | HIC in a purification strategy (CIPP)   | 81  |
|----------|----|---|-----|
| 44       |    |   |     |
| 45       |    | <ul> <li>Applying CIPP</li> </ul>   | 83  |
| 46       |    | <ul> <li>Selection and combination of</li> </ul>                                      | 83  |
|          |    | purification techniques   |     |
| 50       |    | <ul> <li>HIC as a capture step</li> </ul>   | 85  |
|          |    | <ul> <li>HIC for intermediate purification</li> </ul>                                 | 87  |
|          |    | <ul> <li>HIC as a polishing step</li> </ul>   | 89  |
| 51       |    |   |     |
|          | 05 | Large-scale purification  | 92  |
| 56       |    |   |     |
| 59       |    | <ul> <li>BioProcess<sup>™</sup> chromatography</li> </ul>                             | 93  |
| 59       |    | resins for HIC  | 0.4 |
| 50       |    | <ul> <li>Capture purification</li> </ul>  | 94  |
| 59       |    | <ul> <li>Polishing purification</li> </ul>  | 95  |
| 61       |    | <ul> <li>Prepacked, disposable solutions</li> </ul>                                   | 95  |
| 64<br>65 |    | speed up the downstream process   | 0.0 |
| 65<br>05 |    | Process Characterization Kit  | 96  |
| 65       |    | <ul> <li>Custom Designed Media (CDM)</li> <li>Machanistic abromatography</li> </ul>   | 96  |
| 66       |    | <ul> <li>Mechanistic chromatography</li> <li>medaling anabling smarter and</li> </ul> | 96  |
| 66<br>60 |    | modeling enabling smarter and   |     |
| 69<br>72 |    | faster process development  |     |
| 72       | 00 | Poversed phase chromategraphy   | 97  |
| 72       | 06 | Reversed phase chromatography:<br>principles and methods                              | 97  |
| 12       |    | principles and methods  |     |
| 73       |    | <ul> <li>Terminology</li> </ul>   | 99  |
| 75       |    | RPC in theory   | 99  |
| 80       |    | <ul> <li>Steps in an RPC separation</li> </ul>  | 100 |
| 80       |    | <ul> <li>Components of an RPC resin</li> </ul>  | 102 |
| 80       |    | • Eluents   | 103 |
|          |    | Elution   | 106 |

| • | Binding capacity                           |
|---|--|
| • | RPC in practice                            |
| • | Typical eluent protocols for               |
|   | separation of proteins and                 |
|   | peptides                                   |
| • | Sample preparation                         |
| • | Sample solubility                          |
| • | Troubleshooting                            |
| • | SOURCE <sup>™</sup> chromatography resins: |
|   | rapid separation with high                 |
|   | resolution and easy scale-up               |
| • | Purification examples                      |
| • | Cleaning                                   |
| • | Chemical stability                         |
| • | Storage                                    |
|   |  |
| F | RPC and CIPP                               |
| • | RPC as a capture step                      |
| _ | DDC for interneodiate                      |

- RPC for intermediate purification
- RPC as a polishing step

108

- 127 127 127
- 127

Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Contents

### Appendix

| 01 | Sample preparation   | 128 |
|----|--|-----|
|    | Sample stability   | 129 |
|    | <ul> <li>Sample clarification</li> </ul>                             | 130 |
|    | <ul> <li>Specific sample preparation steps</li> </ul>                | 131 |
|    | <ul> <li>Buffer exchange and desalting</li> </ul>                    | 135 |
|    | Removal of lipoproteins  | 137 |
|    | Removal of phenol red  | 137 |
|    | <ul> <li>Removal of low molecular weight<br/>contaminants</li> </ul> | 137 |
| 02 | Column packing and preparation                                       | 138 |
|    | Column selection   | 141 |
|    | <ul> <li>Column packing and efficiency</li> </ul>                    | 141 |
| 03 | Selection of lab-scale purification equipment                        | 143 |
| 04 | Converting from flow velocity to<br>volumetric flow rates            | 145 |
| 05 | Conversion data: proteins, column pressures                          | 147 |
| 06 | Table of amino acids   | 149 |

| 07 | Analytical assays  |
|----|--|
|    | <ul> <li>Total protein determination</li> <li>SDS-PAGE analysis</li> <li>Purity determination</li> </ul> |
| 08 | Storage  |
|    | <ul> <li>Storage of biological samples</li> </ul>  |
| 09 | Column cleaning for HIC resins   |
|    | Removal of common contaminants   |
|    | Removal of lipids, lipoproteins, and hydrophobic proteins  |
|    |  |

|     | 152               | Handbooks from Cytiva   | 160        |
|-----|-------------------|---|------------|
|     | 153<br>153<br>153 | Ordering information  | 162        |
|     | 155               | Hydrophobic interaction chromatography products<br>• Capto™ HIC products                        | 163<br>163 |
| i   | 156               | <ul> <li>SOURCE<sup>™</sup> HIC products</li> <li>Sepharose<sup>™</sup> HIC products</li> </ul> | 163<br>164 |
| าร  | 157               | Reversed phase chromatography products  | 165        |
| nts | 158               | Other columns and accessories   | 166        |
| and | 158               |   |            |



### Introduction

To purify biomolecules, scientists use chromatography techniques that separate them according to differences in their specific properties, as shown in Figure I1.1. There are different chromatographic techniques available according to your requirements (see Table I1.1). Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC) separates biomolecules in relatively mild conditions according to differences in their hydrophobicity.

**Table 11.1.** Types of chromatographic techniques, and their properties

| Technique   | Property            |
|---|---------------------|
| Hydrophobicity interaction chromatography (HIC)                       | Hydrophobicity      |
| Reversed phase chromatography (RPC)                                   | Hydrophobicity      |
| Ion exchange chromatography (IEX)                                     | Charge              |
| Size exclusion chromatography (SEC, also called gel filtration)       | Size                |
| Affinity chromatography (AC)  | Biorecognition (lig |
| Multimodal chromatography (MM, also called mixed-mode chromatography) | A combination of s  |
|   |                     |

Many scientists use HIC in protein purification as a complement to other techniques that separate according to charge, size, or biospecific recognition. HIC is a good next step after subjecting your samples to ammonium sulfate precipitation (often used for initial sample concentration, and clean-up), or after separation by ion exchange chromatography. In both situations, the sample has a high salt concentration, and you can directly apply it to the HIC column with little or no additional preparation. The elevated salt level enhances the interaction between the hydrophobic components of the sample and the chromatography resin.

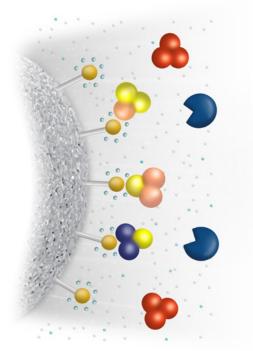
During separation, scientists purify, and elute samples in smaller volumes — this concentrates the sample so that it can go directly to size exclusion chromatography or, after a buffer exchange, to an ion exchange separation. You can use HIC for capture, intermediate purification, or polishing steps in a purification protocol. Cytiva has resins that you can use for small-scale separations in the laboratory, through to the production of kilogram quantities of product.

This handbook describes both theoretical, and practical aspects of the technique, the resins available, and how to select them, together with application examples, and detailed instructions for the most common procedures. You will find practical information with many hints and tips drawn from our over 60 yr of experience in chromatography purification — the handbook will help beginners and experts to obtain optimal results from the latest chromatography resins.

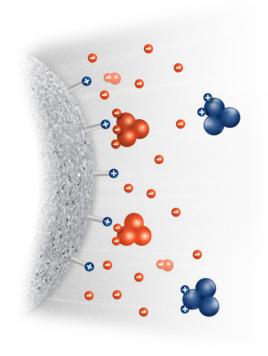
Chapter 6 focuses on RPC, a technique that provides good resolution separations. You can also use RPC as a final polishing step in a purification strategy, but you should ensure that the presence of organic solvents does not compromise the recovery of biological activity or tertiary structure.



Size exclusion



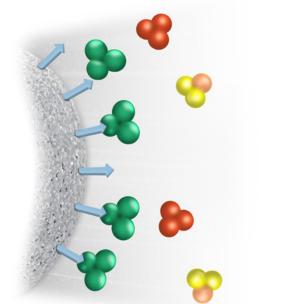
Hydrophobic interaction



lon exchange

igand specificity)

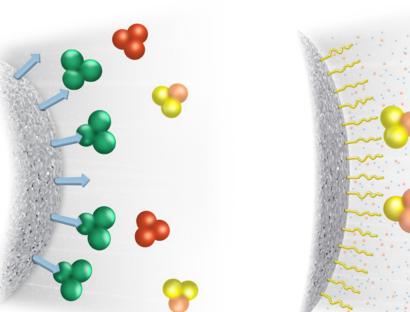
several protein properties



Affinity

**Reversed** phase

Fig I.1. Separation principles in chromatographic purification.





### Symbols

| (J | Highlights troubleshooting advice to help analyze, and resolve difficulties.    |
|----|---|
|    | Denotes mandatory advice and gives a warning when special care should be taken. |
|    | Highlights chemicals, buffers, and equipment.                                   |
|    | Provides an outline of the experimental protocol.                               |
|    |   |

### **Common abbreviations in chromatography Abbreviations found in product names**

| A <sub>280nm</sub> , A <sub>214nm</sub> | UV absorb                |
|---|--------------------------|
| AC                                      | affinity cl              |
| CF                                      | chromato                 |
| CIPP                                    | capture, i               |
| CIP                                     | cleaning i               |
| CV                                      | column v                 |
| DBC                                     | dynamic                  |
| HIC                                     | hydropho                 |
| IEX                                     | ion excha                |
| MM                                      | mixed mo<br>multimod     |
| MPa                                     | megaPas                  |
| M <sub>r</sub>                          | relative n               |
| N/m                                     | column e<br>per mete     |
| pl                                      | isoelectri<br>zero net s |
| psi                                     | pounds p                 |
| RPC                                     | reversed                 |
| R <sub>s</sub>                          | resolutior               |
| SDS                                     | sodium d                 |
| SEC                                     | size exclu<br>referred t |

| bance at a specified wavelength      | FF   | Fast Flow                              |
|--------------------------------------|------|--|
| chromatography                       | HP   | High Performance                       |
| ofocusing                            | i.d. | inner diameter                         |
| intermediate purification, polishing | PE   | PEEK                                   |
| in place                             | ST   | column manufactured in stainless steel |
| volume                               |      |  |

- binding capacity
- obic interaction chromatography
- ange chromatography
- ode chromatography (also referred to as dal chromatography)
- scal
- molecular weight
- efficiency expressed as theoretical plates er
- ric point, the pH at which a protein has surface charge
- per square inch
- phase chromatography
- on, the degree of separation between peaks
- dodecyl sulfate
- usion chromatography sometimes to as GF: (gel filtration)

Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### 01Principles of hydrophobic interaction chromatography



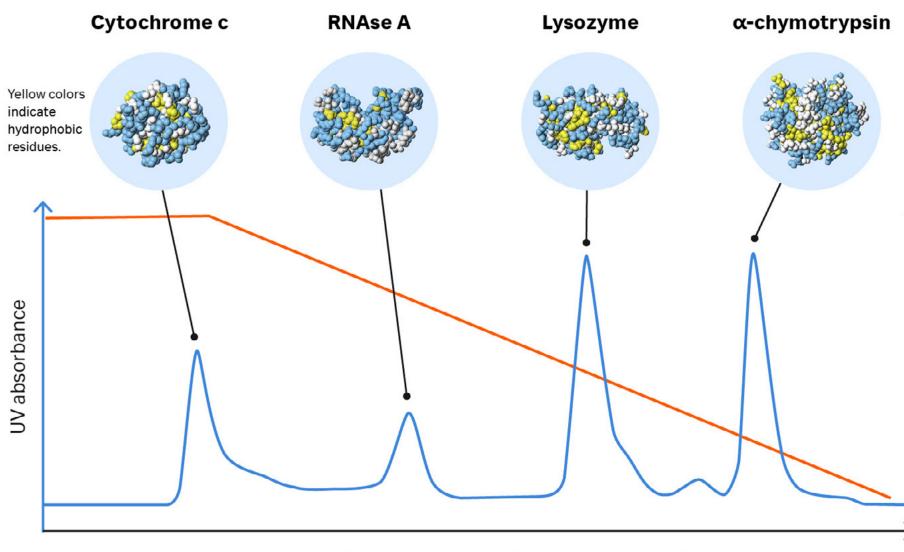
This chapter provides a brief introduction to hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC), and mainly focuses on the basic principles of separation. We cover the practical aspects of performing a separation in Chapter 2.

HIC separates proteins according to differences in their surface hydrophobicity through a reversible interaction between the proteins, and the hydrophobic surface of a HIC resin. Even though you can find several suggestions in the scientific literature, there is no universally accepted theory on the mechanisms involved in HIC.

You can separate standard proteins with different degrees of surface hydrophobicity. Certain salts in the running buffer can significantly influence the way that proteins and a HIC resin interact. A high salt concentration enhances the interaction, and a low salt concentration weakens the interaction.

In the example presented on Fig 1.1, all four proteins interact with the hydrophobic surface of the HIC resin. But as you reduce the ionic strength of the buffer, the interaction reverses, and the protein with the lowest degree of hydrophobicity elutes first. The most hydrophobic protein elutes last, requiring a greater reduction in salt concentration to reverse the interaction.

Column:Phenyl Sepharose™ High Performance packed in Tricorn™ 10/100 columnSample:Cytochrome c, RNAse A, Iysozyme, α-chymotrypsinStart buffer:1.7 M ammonium sulfate, 0.02 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.5Flow rate:0.8 mL/min (24 cm/h)Elution buffer:0.02 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.5Flow rate:1 mL/min, 76 cm/hGradient:0% to 100% elution buffer in 10 CV



Proteins separated in order of increasing surface hydrophobicity

**Fig 1.1.** Proteins separate according to differences in their surface hydrophobicity (yellow indicates hydrophobic and blue hydrophilic amino acid residues), as shown in this separation of standard proteins on Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance.



hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Hydrophobic interaction chromatography in theory

### The role of water

Water is a good solvent for polar substances, but a poor solvent for nonpolar substances. In any liquid water, most of the water molecules occur in clusters due to hydrogen bonding between themselves (Fig 1.2). The half-life of water clusters is short, but the net effect is a strong cohesion between the water molecules. this is shown, for example, by a high boiling point.

At an air-water interface, water molecules arrange themselves into a strong shell of a highly ordered structure. Here, the possibility to form hydrogen bonds is no longer in balance — instead, the liquid side of the interface dominates. This gives rise to an ordered structure that manifests itself as strong surface tension. Anything that influences the stability of the water shell also affects the surface tension.

When you immerse a hydrophobic substance like a protein or hydrophobic ligand in water, something analogous to the surface tension phenomenon happens. The water molecules cannot "wet" the surface of the hydrophobic substance. Instead, they form a highly ordered shell around the substance, due to their inability to form hydrogen bonds in all directions.

Minimizing the extent of this shell decreases the number of ordered water molecules – that is, a thermodynamically more favorable situation in which entropy increases. To gain entropy, hydrophobic substances need to merge and minimize the total area of shells. This means that hydrophobic interaction depends on the behavior of the water molecules rather than on direct attraction between the hydrophobic molecules (Fig 1.2).

### **Protein structure**

The three-dimensional structure of a protein is a result of intramolecular interactions as well as interactions with the surrounding solvent. For readily soluble proteins, this solvent is water, which typically drives hydrophobic side chains to the interior of the protein. The final structure is a result of a thermodynamic compromise that best suits the surrounding solution. So although the interior of globular proteins buries most hydrophobic amino acid residues, some are exposed, and this results in hydrophobic patches on the protein surface.

Because proteins carry both hydrophilic and hydrophobic areas on their surfaces, they might precipitate at high concentrations of certain salts due to enforced hydrophobic interaction. Changes in ionic strength, the presence of organic solvents, temperature, and pH (especially at the isoelectric point, pl, when there is no net surface charge) can all affect protein structure, and solubility and, consequently, the interaction with other hydrophobic surfaces, like those in HIC resins.

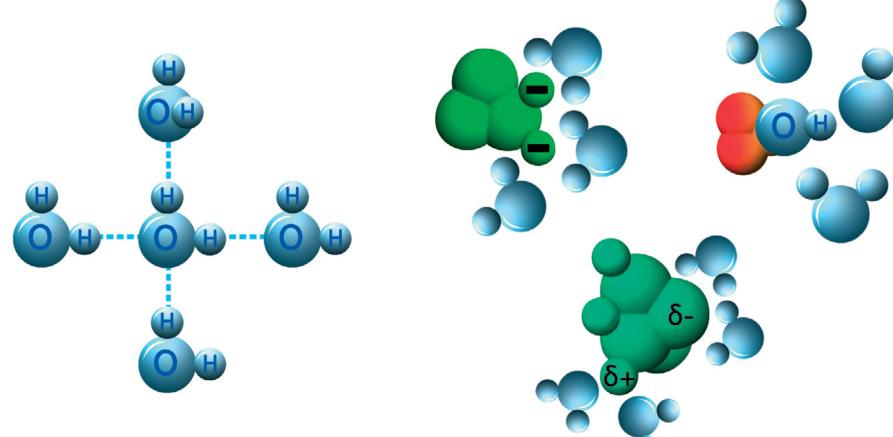


Fig 1.2. The solubilizing properties of water reside in its ability to interact with dipoles and form hydrogen bonds.

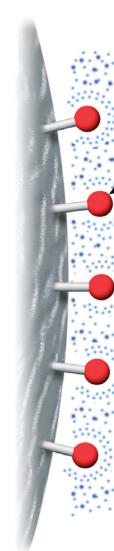




### **Reversible interactions**

The hydrophobic ligands on HIC resins can interact with the hydrophobic surfaces of proteins. In pure water, any hydrophobic effect is too weak to cause interaction between ligand and proteins or between the proteins themselves. However, certain salts enhance hydrophobic interactions, and adding such salts brings about binding (adsorption) to HIC resins. For selective elution (desorption), scientists lower the salt concentration gradually, and the sample components elute in order of hydrophobicity (Fig 1.3).

The result of a HIC separation is based on the interplay between the prevalence and distribution of surface-exposed hydrophobic amino acid residues, the hydrophobicity of the resin, the nature, and composition of the sample, and the type, and concentration of salt used in the buffers.



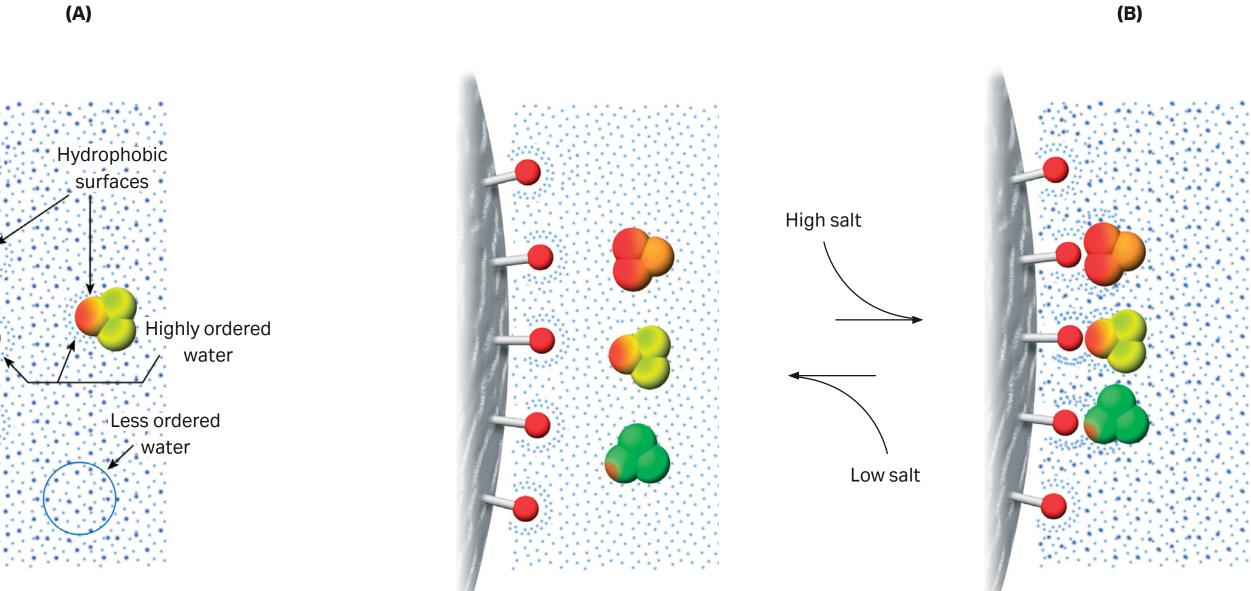


Fig 1.3. (A) Highly ordered water shells surround the hydrophobic surfaces of ligands and proteins. Hydrophobic substances are forced to merge to minimize the total area of such shells (maximize entropy). Salts enhance the hydrophobic interaction. (B) The equilibrium of the hydrophobic interaction is controlled predominantly by the salt concentration.



ography

### **Steps in a HIC separation**

HIC resins are composed of ligands that contain alkyl or aryl groups coupled to an inert matrix of spherical particles. The matrix is porous to provide a high internal surface area, while the ligand plays a significant role in the final hydrophobicity of the resin. Packing the resin into a column forms a packed bed. For more details on column packing, see Appendix 2. Equilibrating the bed with buffer fills the pores of the matrix and the space in between the particles. Figure 1.4 illustrates the separation process that follows.

Moderately high salt concentrations promote interaction between the protein and the resin, typically 1 to 2 M ammonium sulfate or 3 M NaCI. Scientists select the type of salt, and the concentration required in the start buffer to ensure that the proteins of interest bind to the resin, and that other less hydrophobic proteins, and impurities pass directly through the column.



Binding conditions are a key factor in any HIC separation. At this stage, they can significantly influence the final selectivity, resolution, and binding capacity of the target protein(s). Samples should be in the same salt conditions as the start buffer, but there is rarely any need to perform a buffer exchange as buffer ions, and pH plays a less important role. You can adjust the pH directly if necessary.

Since many proteins can precipitate in raised salt concentrations, you should check the "stability window" of the target protein(s) at different salt concentrations before optimizing binding conditions. Precipitation of the target protein might make separation impossible or, at best significantly reduce yield. The simplest approach to determine a "stability window" can be to observe the samples in a test tube at different salt concentrations and monitor protein activity left in the supernatant.

When sample loading is completed and the column has been washed so that all unbound proteins have passed through (i.e., the UV signal has returned to baseline), conditions are altered to begin elution. To elute proteins, you can decrease the salt concentration in the elution buffer. As the level of salt decreases, proteins with the lowest hydrophobicity begin to elute from the column. You can use gradients to control changes in salt concentration and elute proteins differentially in a purified, concentrated form. Proteins with the highest degree of hydrophobicity will be most strongly retained and will be eluted last.

A wash step in a salt-free buffer removes most tightly bound proteins at the end of an elution. If you have correctly judged the hydrophobicity of the resin and the proteins in the sample, all proteins will be eluted by this stage. Then you can reequilibrate the column in the start buffer before applying more samples in the next run.

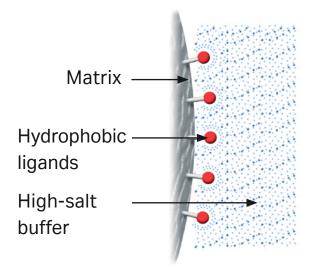


Occasionally the hydrophobic interaction is so tight that you might need harsher conditions to remove all bound material, for example, 0.5 to 1.0 M NaOH, 70% ethanol, or 30% isopropanol. You will need to follow these wash steps with water or salt-free buffer wash before reequilibrating the column with a high-salt start buffer. See also Column cleaning, Appendix 9.

Alternatively, you can choose conditions that maximize the binding of hydrophobic contaminants and allow the target protein(s) to pass through the column.





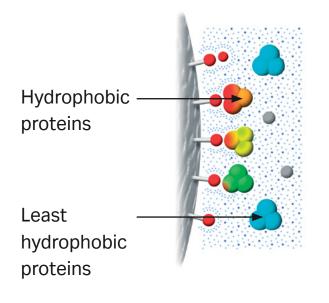


### Equilibration

HIC resin equilibrated with high-salt start buffer.

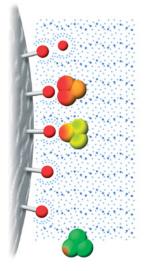


Time/volume



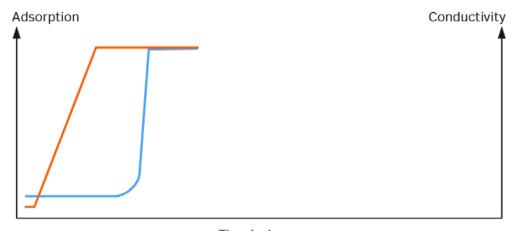
### Sample application

Start buffer allows binding of hydrophobic proteins to hydrophobic ligands on the resin, which leads to concentration of proteins on the ligand. Proteins with insufficent hydrophobic proteins elute during or just after sample application.



### Elution 1

Decreasing salt content (using a linear gradient) causes hydrophobic proteins to elute. The least hydrophobic proteins elute first.



Time/volume

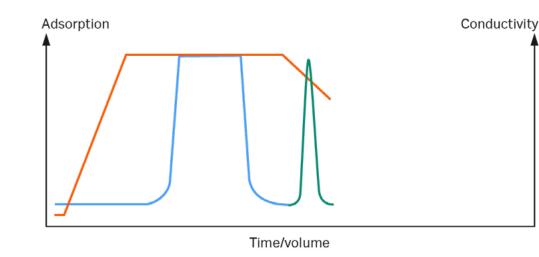
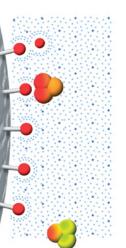


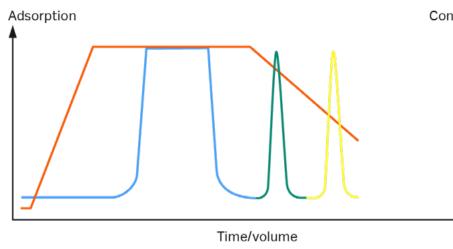
Fig 1.4. Steps in a HIC separation

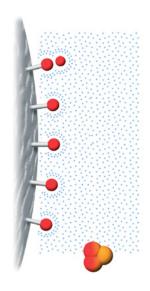




### Elution 2

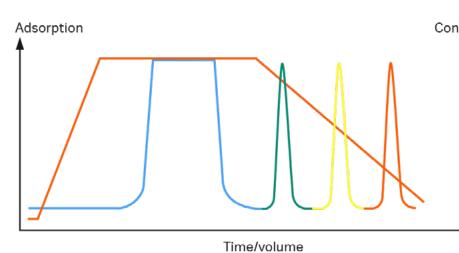
Further decreases in salt displace the more hydrophobic proteins (more tightly bound).

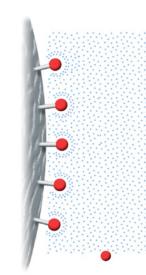




### Elution 3

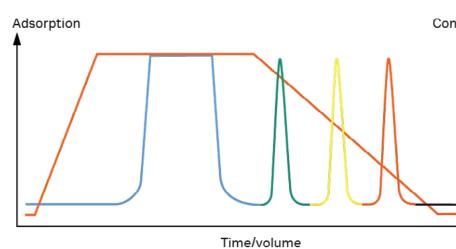
More proteins are displaced as the salt content continues to decrease.





### Wash

Final "salt-free" wash removes any hydrophobically bound proteins before re-equilbration.







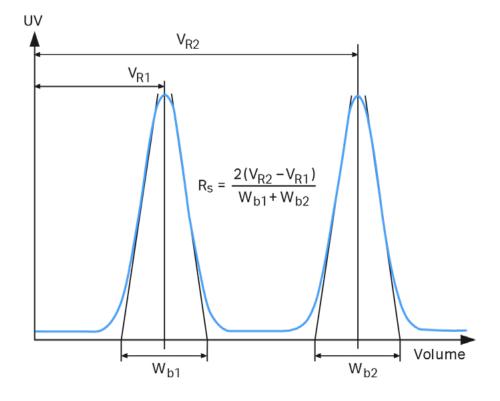
### Resolution

The resolution of a HIC separation is a combination of the degree of separation between the peaks eluted from the column (selectivity), the ability of the column to produce narrow, symmetrical peaks (efficiency), and, of course, the amount (mass) of sample applied. These factors are influenced by practical issues like matrix properties, binding and elution conditions, column packing, and flow rates; we cover these in detail in Chapter 2. Resolution (R<sub>s</sub>) is defined as the distance between peak maxima compared with the average base width of the two peaks. R<sub>s</sub> can be determined from a chromatogram, as shown in Figure 1.5.

Measuring elution volumes and peak widths with the same units give a dimensionless resolution value.  $R_s$  gives a measure of the relative separation between two peaks, and you can use it to determine whether you need to further optimize the chromatographic procedure.

If  $R_s = 1.0$  (Fig 1.6), then 98% purity has been achieved at 98% of peak recovery, provided the peaks are symmetrical and approximately equal in size. Baseline resolution requires  $R_s > 1.5$ . At this value, peak purity is 100%.

A single, well-resolved peak is not necessarily a pure substance, but it might represent a series of components that could not separate in the chosen elution conditions. You might need further purification using an alternative chromatography resin. *See* Chapter 4 for advice on purification strategies.





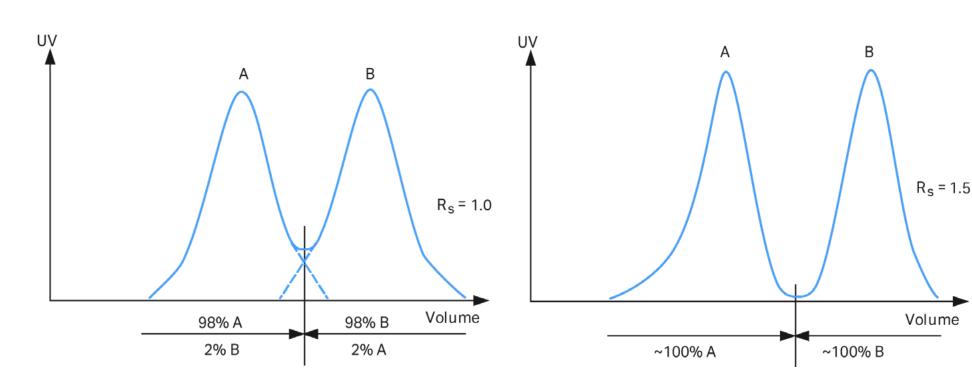


Fig 1.6. Separation results with different resolutions.



### Efficiency

Column efficiency is the ability to elute narrow, symmetrical peaks from a packed bed. It relates to the zone broadening that occurs on the column, and scientists often describe it in terms of the number of theoretical plates (*see* Appendix 2 for determination of column efficiency).

One of the main causes of zone broadening is the longitudinal diffusion of the solute molecules (proteins). You can minimize zone broadening if you minimize the distances available for diffusion. In all situations, a well-packed column significantly contributes to resolution. Columns that are packed unevenly, too tightly, too loosely, or that contain air bubbles, will lead to channeling (uneven passage of buffer through the column), and zone broadening, resulting in loss of resolution. Figure 1.7 illustrates the parameters that contribute to good column efficiency. Particle size is a significant factor in resolution and, in general, the smallest particles will produce the narrowest peaks in the correct elution conditions, in a well-packed column.



لى ا

Although you can improve resolution by decreasing the particle size of the matrix, using smaller particles often creates an increase in backpressure. That means you would need to decrease flow rates to compensate, which lengthens the run time. Because of this, you should match the resin with the requirements for purification (speed, resolution, and purity).

If you run columns packed with small particles, the viscosity of large volumes of highly concentrated samples can reduce the resolution. You might need to dilute your samples or use larger particles.

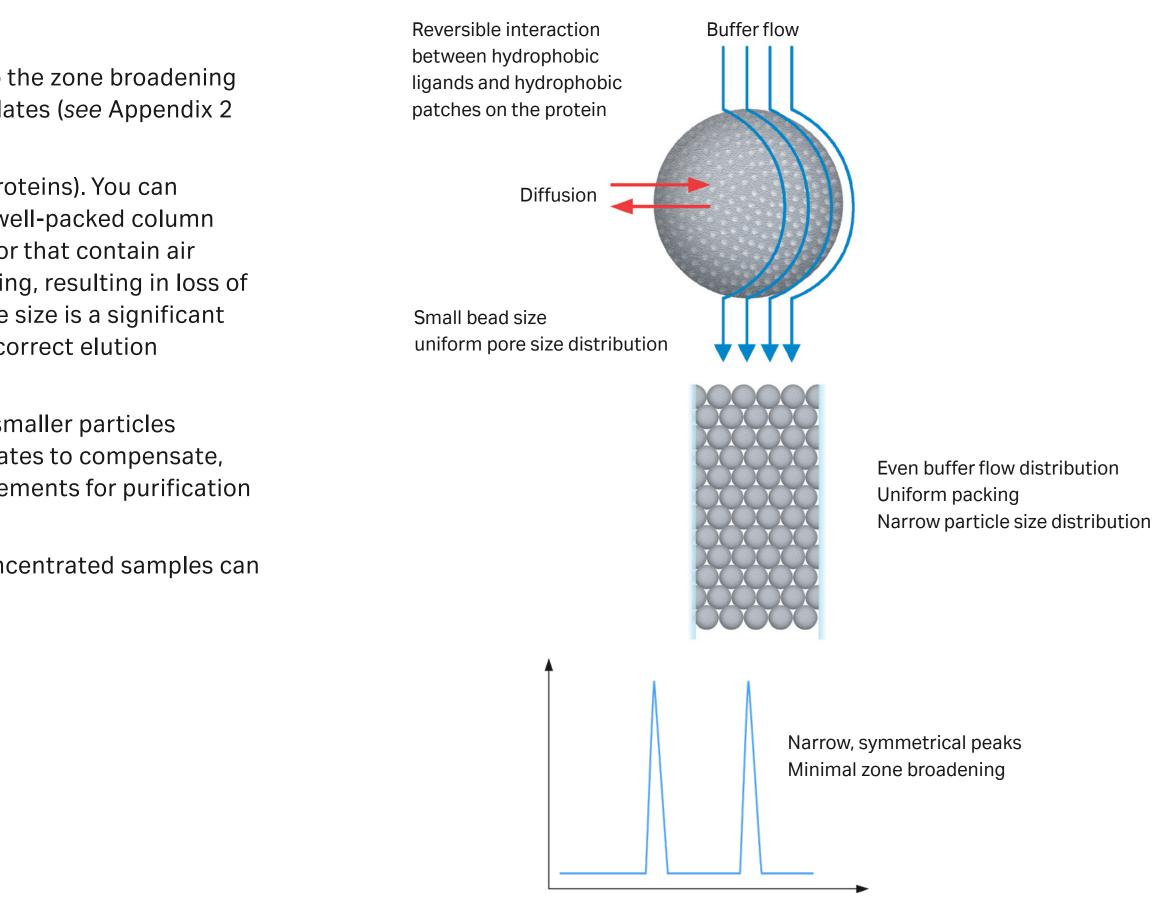


Fig 1.7. Factors that affect column efficiency.



### Selectivity

When determining resolution, good selectivity (the degree of separation between peaks) is a more important factor than high efficiency (Fig 1.8).

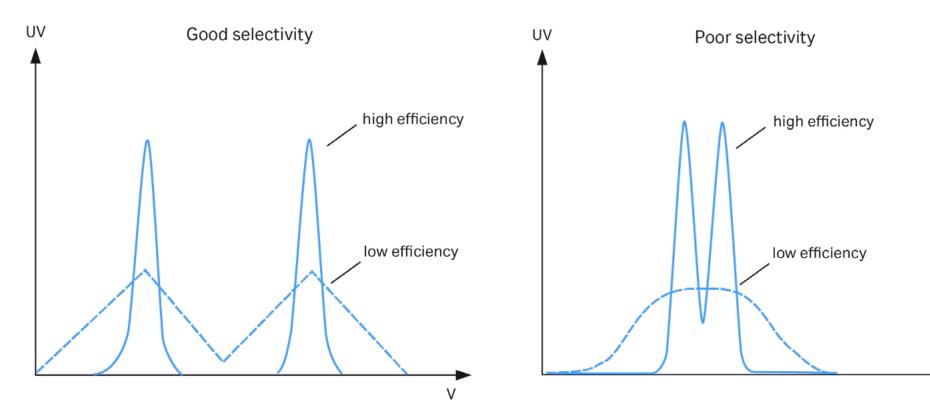
In HIC, selectivity depends largely on the nature of the ligand, the ligand's degree of substitution on the matrix, the nature of the matrix, the nature of the target protein, the type of salt, and the concentration of salt used for binding. Establishing a balance between these properties leads to a well-resolved, highly selective HIC separation.

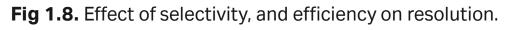
### Selectivity and binding capacity

Although HIC resins are described according to the type of ligand (and sometimes ligand density), the actual amount of protein that you can bind to a HIC resin in your experimental conditions is more relevant. This is referred to as the available capacity of a resin for a specific protein. If the defined conditions include the flow rate of the resin, you can refer to the amount bound as the dynamic capacity of the resin. The dynamic capacity of a HIC resin is dependent on the properties of the resin, the protein being purified, and the experimental conditions such as salt concentration, flow rate, temperature, and, to a lesser extent, pH.



The properties of the ligand, target protein, salt, and salt concentration play such a significant role in determining the final selectivity, and binding capacity of a HIC resin that you need to determine and optimize these parameters by experimentation. That's unlike techniques like ion exchange or affinity chromatography where you can use "standard proteins" as a guideline to predict selectivity and capacity.







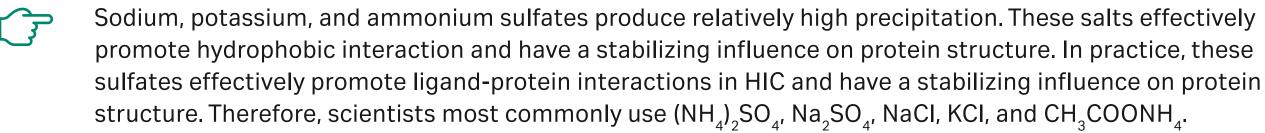
### Selectivity and salt selection

When using HIC resins, the ability of a particular salt to promote hydrophobic interaction depends on the ionic species present and their concentration (Fig 1.9). Protein precipitation has the same driving force that you see when hydrophobic proteins interact with a hydrophobic resin. It is also enhanced by increasing the ionic strength (concentration) of the surrounding buffer.

The Hofmeister series describes the elution and precipitation strength of an ion. Small, highly charged ions are strong precipitators (anti-chaotropic), whereas organic acids and bases have a more stabilizing effect (chaotropic) on the proteins in a solution. The term chaotropic refers to the ability of the ion to produce order or chaos in the water structure. Calcium and magnesium salts are not the strong precipitators that you might expect from the Hofmeister series because these ions can bind to specific sites on the protein surface.

Anion:  $SO_4^{2-} > HPO_4^{2-} > CH_3COO^{-} > CI^{-} > NO^{3-} > Br^{-} > CIO^{3-} > I^{-} > CIO^{4-} > SCN^{-}$ 

Cation:  $NH_{4}^{+} > K^{+} > Na^{+} > Li^{+} > Mg^{2+} > Ca^{2+} > guanidinium$ 





The amount of protein that you can bind to HIC resins increases almost linearly up to a specific salt concentration. At higher salt concentrations, the amount bound continues to increase exponentially. If the protein is unstable or its stability is unknown, we recommend performing protein binding in the region where the amount of bound protein increases linearly with the salt concentration.

### Selectivity and the properties of a HIC resin

While ligands contribute significantly to a resin's hydrophobicity, the matrix can also influence the final selectivity. Chromatography resins for hydrophobic interaction are made from porous matrices. These matrices are chosen for their physical stability, their chemical resistance to stringent cleaning conditions, and their low level of nonspecific interaction.

### $Na_2SO_4 > K_2SO_4 > (NH_4)_2SO_4 > Na_2HPO_4 > NaCI > LiCI ..... > KSCN$

Fig 1.9. Relative effects of some salts on protein precipitation.



## ography:

### Matrix

- 1. A good balance between porosity and particle size offers a large surface area covered by ligands and ensures a high binding capacity. When separating large biomolecules, high porosity with an open pore structure is an advantage.
- 2. An inert matrix minimizes nonspecific interactions with sample components.
- 3. High physical stability ensures that the volume of the packed resin remains constant despite extreme changes in salt concentration or pH, helping to improve reproducibility and avoid the need to repack columns.
- 4. High physical stability and uniformity of particle size facilitate high flow rates, particularly during cleaning, and re-equilibration steps, to improve throughput, and productivity.
- 5. High chemical stability ensures that you can clean the matrix using stringent cleaning solutions if needed.
- 6. Modern HIC resins use agarose-based matrices to fulfill the requirements for chemical, and physical stability, high binding capacity, and different particle sizes (Table 1.1).

We based our Capto<sup>™</sup>, and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes modern resins on a chemically modified, highly cross-linked agarose matrix (Table 1.1). This matrix provides particle rigidity without compromising pore size, outstanding pressure-flow properties, and high chemical stability to support cleaning-in-place procedures. You can use Capto<sup>™</sup> and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins for scaling up, and in large-scale bioprocess purifications, but also at lab scale, for research, and process development needs. To select the most suitable matrix, consider the degree of resolution, binding capacity, and flow rates you need. For example, gradient elution on Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins (40 µm) will give a highresolution separation, whereas the larger particles of Capto<sup>™</sup> resins (75 µm) are best suited for high capacity, step elution at a high flow rate.

Modern resins

Legacy resins

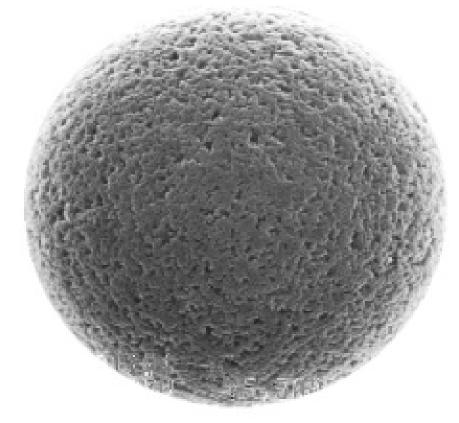


Fig 1.10. Highly cross-linked agarose, spherical bead (Capto<sup>™</sup> resin)

We offer our legacy Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance (34 µm) and Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow (90 µm) as alternatives to our modern resins. Sepharose<sup>™</sup> matrices are based on hydrophilic chains of agarose, arranged in bundles, and with different degrees of intra-chain crosslinking. To choose between Sepharose™ High Performance (34 µm) and Sepharose™ Fast Flow (90 µm), consider the degree of resolution, binding capacity, and flow rates that you need.

Table 1.1. Matrices used for HIC resins

| Resin                       | Matrix and form   | <b>Particle</b> s |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------|
| Capto™ ImpRes               | Highly cross-linked agarose, spherical  | 40 µm             |
| Capto™                      | Highly cross-linked agarose, spherical  | 75 µm             |
| Sepharose™ High Performance | Cross-linked agarose, spherical   | 34 µm             |
| Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow      | Cross-linked agarose 6%, spherical  | 90 µm             |
| Sepharose™ 4 Fast Flow      | Cross-linked agarose 4%, spherical  | 90 µm             |
| SOURCE™ 15                  | Spherical and monodisperse, porous, rigid, polystyrene/divinylbenzene particles | 15 µm²            |

<sup>1</sup> Median particle size of the cumulative volume distribution.

<sup>2</sup> Mean particle diameter (monodisperse size distribution)

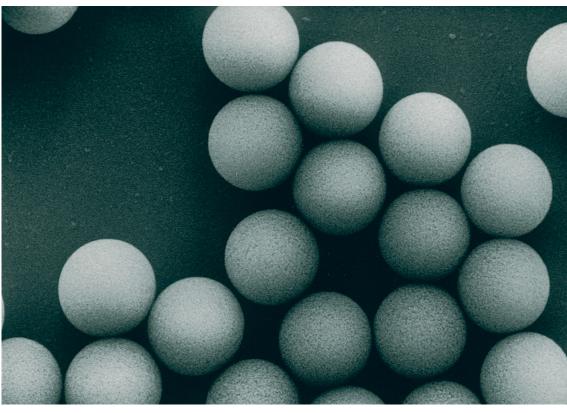
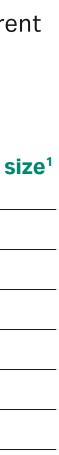


Fig 1.11. Electron micrograph of SOURCE<sup>™</sup> showing spherical, monodispersed particles.







Over the years, scientists have used different matrices for HIC resins, for example, Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow or High Performance substituted with various ligands, and you can still find references to them in scientific literature. Some established processes still include them today. However, more recently developed Capto<sup>™</sup>, and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins are based on a very rigid, high-flow agarose base matrix with an optimized pore structure that offers outstanding pressure, and flow properties. If you want to benefit from significantly faster separations, and improved performance, you can test for selectivity on Capto<sup>™</sup>, and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins, and reoptimize old protocols.

A SOURCE<sup>™</sup> matrix is made from polystyrene with divinylbenzene to produce highly spherical (monodispersed), small (15 µm), porous particles (Fig 1.11) that facilitate high-resolution separations at high flow rates.

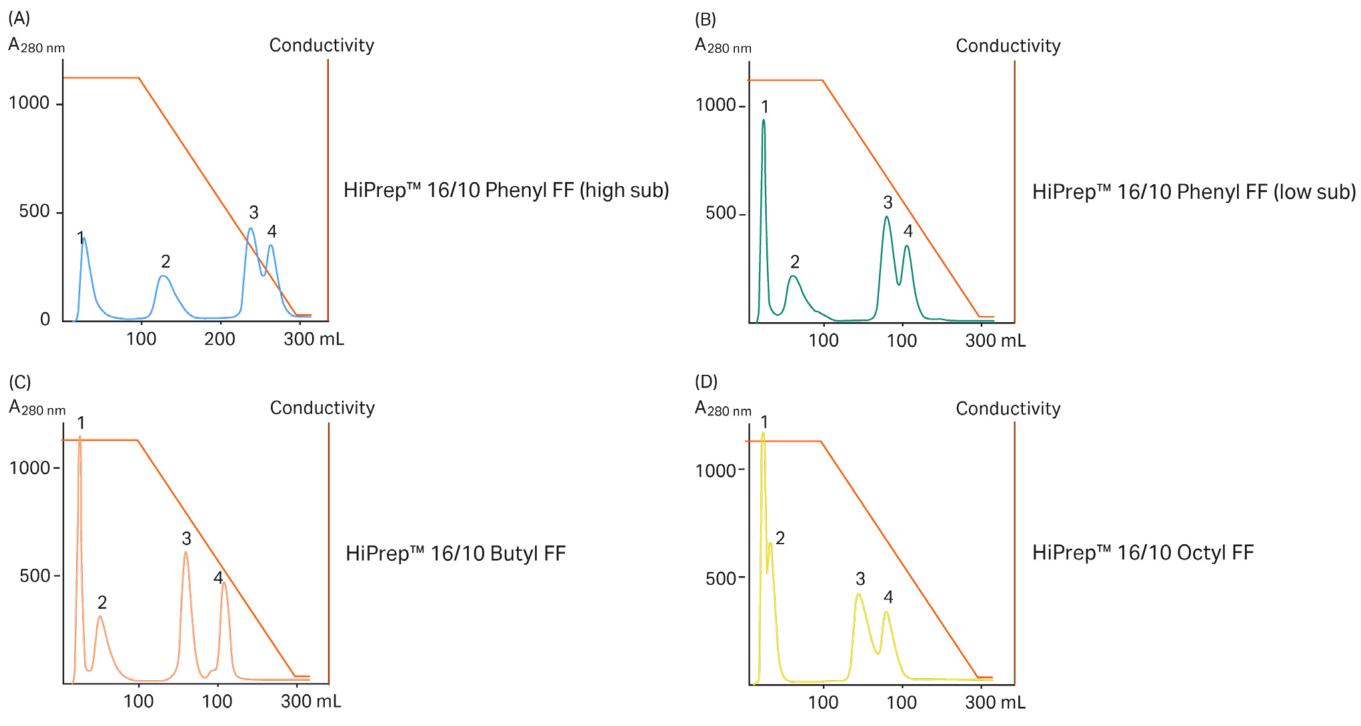


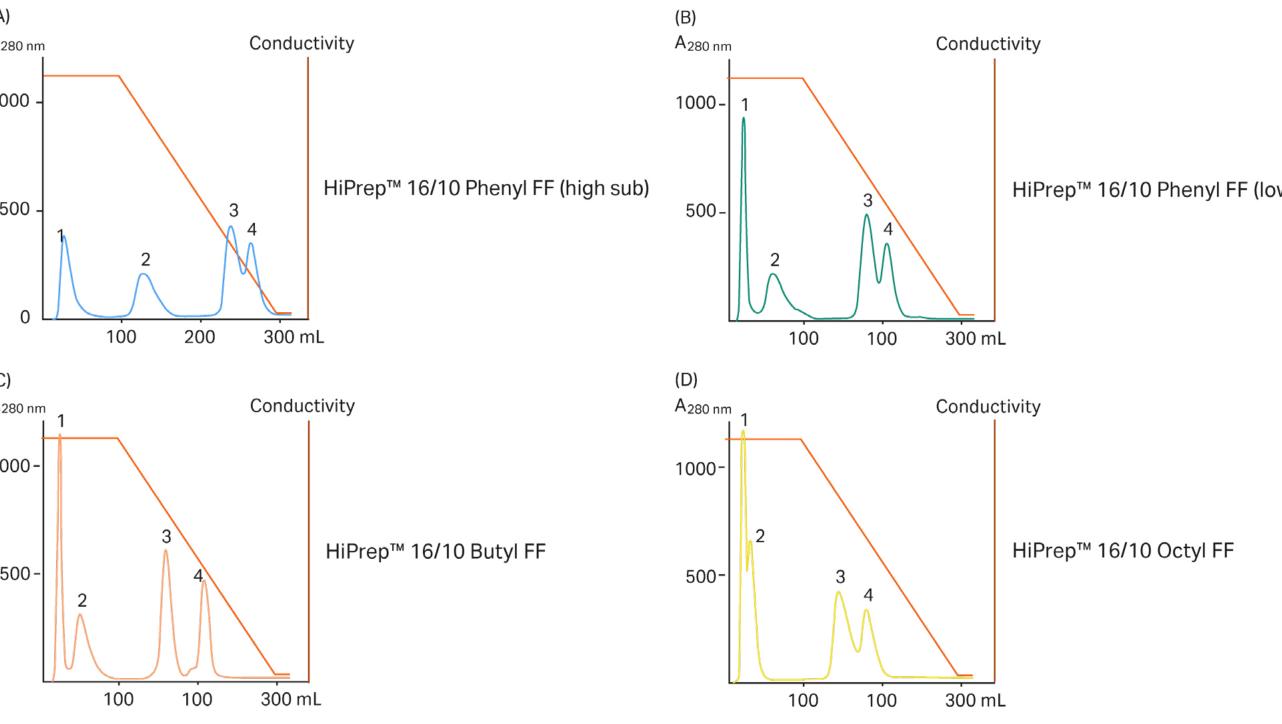
### Ligands and degree of substitution

The ligand and the degree of ligand substitution on a chromatography matrix also contribute to the final hydrophobicity of the resin and its selectivity. Figure 1.12 shows an example of a protein mixture separated on the same base matrix, but with four different ligand conditions; phenyl (high substitution), phenyl (low substitution), butyl, and octyl.

Sample: Sample load: Start buffer: Elution buffer: Flow: Gradient: Detection:

Ligands:





(A) Phenyl (high sub) (B) Phenyl (low sub) (C) Butyl (D) Octyl cytochrome C (1) 10 mg/mL, ribonuclease A (2) 30 mg/mL, lysozyme (3) 10 mg/mL, α-chymotrypsinogen (4) 10 mg/mL 2 mL in start buffer 100 mM sodium phosphate, 1.5 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0 100 mM sodium phosphate, 2 mL/min, 60 cm/h

0% to 100% elution buffer in 10 CV

280 nm

Fig 1.12. Different ligands and differences in ligand density influence the selectivity of a HIC resin.





Up to a certain level, the binding capacity of HIC resins increases as ligand density increases. Simultaneously, the strength of the interaction increases, which can lead to difficulties eluting bound components. Selecting a resin substituted with the same ligand, but at a lower ligand density can solve this problem. Figure 1.12 A and B show how the difference in ligand density between two resins can influence selectivity.

The most common hydrophobic ligands are shown in Table 1.2. In general, HIC resins fall into two groups, depending on their interactions with sample components. Straight alkyl chains (butyl, octyl, ether, isopropyl) show a "pure" hydrophobic character, while aryl ligands (phenyl) show a mixed-mode behavior where both aromatic, and hydrophobic interactions, as well as lack of charge, play a role in their final chromatographic properties.



If your protein of interest does not bind in high salt conditions, use a more hydrophobic resin. If the protein of interest binds so strongly that you need nonpolar additives for elution, reduce the salt concentration in the start buffer or use a less hydrophobic resin.

### **Table 1.2.** Ligands substituted on HIC resins

| -0-  |
|--|
| $-S-(CH_2)_3-CH_3$                           |
| $-O-(CH_2)_3-CH_3$                           |
| $-O-(CH_2)_7 - CH_3$                         |
| -O-CH <sub>2</sub> -CHOH-CH <sub>2</sub> -OH |
| -0-CH-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>        |
|  |

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### **Selectivity and elution**

Figures 1.13 and 1.14 show the most common forms of HIC separation where you elute proteins by decreasing the salt content of a buffer using linear gradient or step elution. The UV absorbance and conductivity traces show the elution of protein peaks, and the changes in salt concentration, respectively during elution. Buffer volumes used during sample application, elution, washing, and re-equilibration are expressed in column volumes (CV). For example, 5 CV = 5 mL for a column with a 1 mL bed volume. Using CV to describe a separation profile supports method development and method transfer to columns with different dimensions when scaling up.

We often use *gradient elution* (Fig 1.13) when starting with an unknown sample (as many components as possible are bound to the column and eluted differentially to see a total protein profile) and for high-resolution separation and analysis.

We use step elution (Fig 1.14) in several ways. After optimizing a HIC separation using gradient elution, changing to a step elution speeds up separation times, and reduces buffer consumption while retaining the required purity level.

You can also use the same step elution for group separation to concentrate your proteins of interest, and rapidly remove them from unwanted substances. In this method, you elute the target protein(s) in an enriched, concentrated form.

Occasionally, you can use step elution to remove contaminants by choosing conditions that maximize contaminant binding and allow the target protein(s) to pass through the column. If you use this method, you should ensure that the binding capacity of the column is sufficient to bind all contaminants.

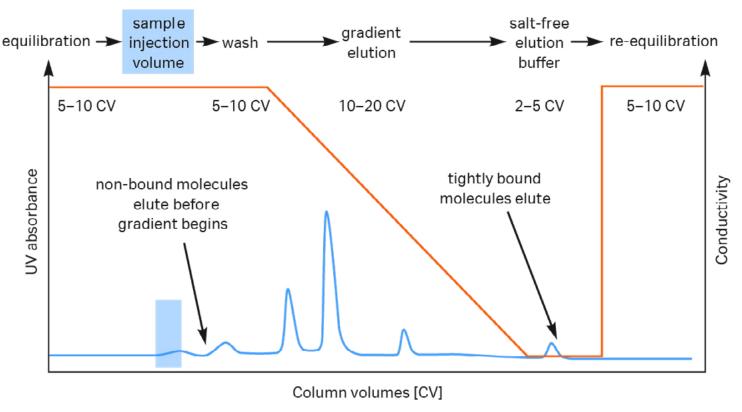
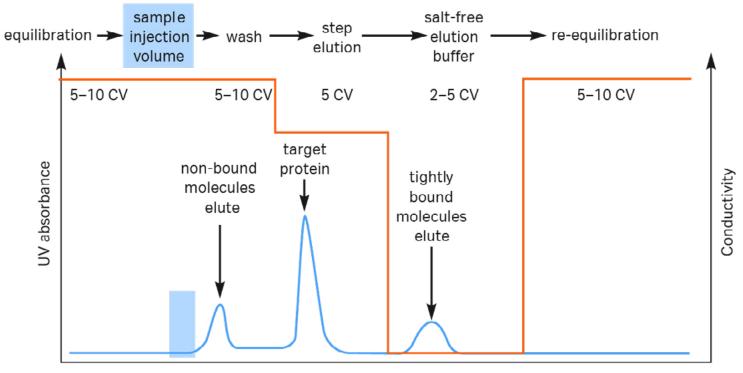


Fig 1.13. Typical high-resolution HIC separation using linear gradient elution.



Column volumes [CV]

Fig 1.14. Typical HIC separation using step elution.



### $\mathbf{02}$ Hydrophobic **Interaction** chromatography in **Dractice**

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

This chapter has practical advice on how to control experimental conditions for successful separation, and guidelines for selecting the good resin or prepacked column for each application. You can find additional application examples, and product-related information in Chapter 3.

### **Resin selection**

We explain the origin, and differences between HIC resins in Chapter 1. Overall, many parameters influence the performance of a HIC resin (selectivity, resolution, and binding capacity): protein properties, ligand type, degree of ligand substitution, concentration, and type of salt used during sample application, presence of detergents, and to a lesser extent, temperature, pH, and type of matrix. Understanding the role and importance of each parameter will help you to perform every separation with the required resolution, throughput, and speed. With so many parameters to consider, we recommend prioritizing separation development steps as follows:

- 1. Screen to select resin with correct selectivity.\*
- 2. Select the type, and concentration of salt to be used during binding.
- 3. Optimize gradient elution to maximize resolution and/or recovery.
- 4. Try additives and/or adjusting pH if the resolution or recovery is not optimal.

\*Selectivity is the most important parameter when choosing a HIC resin. If more than one resin appears suitable, reselect according to the intended final scale of purification and purpose of the separation (capture, intermediate purification, or polishing; *see* Fig 2.1). Your choice of the matrix will often depend on the availability of a resin with the correct selectivity.



Keep the temperature constant throughout all separations.



### **HIC** in a purification strategy (CIPP)

To ensure an efficient and reproducible protein purification that gives the required degree of purity, you should develop a multistep process that follows the strategy of capture, intermediate purification, and polishing (CIPP). We show this strategy in Figure 2.1 and describe it in more detail in Chapter 4.

Each phase has a specific objective that largely depends on the properties of the starting material. You can select a HIC resin according to the aim of the purification step and the condition of your starting material. The pharmaceutical industry and research laboratories often use CIPP for faster method development, to obtain a shorter time to pure product, and for a good economy.

You can use HIC for capture, intermediate purification, or polishing steps. Since your samples should be in a higher salt concentration to promote hydrophobic interaction, HIC is well suited for capture steps after sample clean-up by ammonium sulfate precipitation. HIC is also highly suitable for intermediate steps directly after an ion-exchange separation. In both situations, the sample is already in a high-salt solution and requires only the addition of more salt to complete preparation. Since a HIC separation concentrates the protein of interest into a reduced volume, you can also transfer fractions directly to size exclusion chromatography. You can use HIC with stepwise elution for a rapid capture step, or gradient elution to achieve the highest resolution in a polishing step.

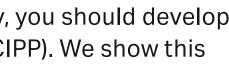
An important first step for any purification is correct sample preparation. We cover this in more detail in Appendix 1, and Chapter 2. See Chapter 4 for more details on the use of CIPP steps in a purification strategy.

### Capture

Resins for primary capture steps where the aim is to isolate, concentrate, and stabilize the target products, should offer high speed, and high capacity. For capture , we recommend HIC resins based on the Capto<sup>™</sup> base matrix (75 µm particle size) — Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl, Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl, or Capto<sup>™</sup> Octyl — as it possesses good pressure, and flow properties (flows up to 600 cm/h).



Select Capto<sup>™</sup> PlasmidSelect (40 µm particle size) for purification of supercoiled DNA.



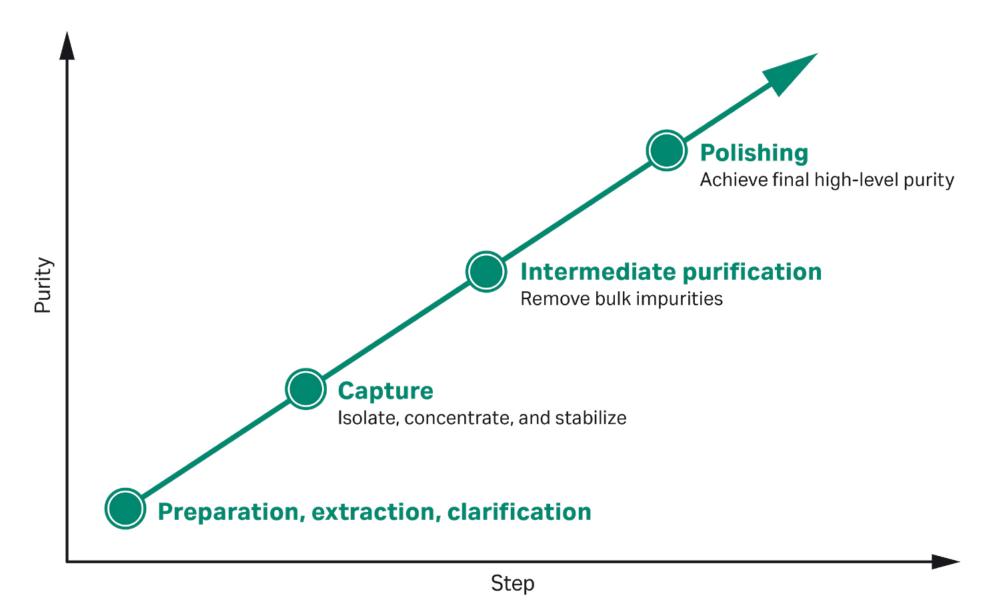


Fig 2.1. Sample preparation, extraction, clarification, and CIPP.



### Intermediate purification

Resins for intermediate purification, where the aim is to remove most of the bulk impurities, should offer high capacity and high resolution. We recommend Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins (butyl- or phenyl-based) with a smaller particle size (40 µm) and good pressure-flow properties.

### Polishing

Resins for polishing steps, where the aim is to achieve final purity by removing trace impurities or closely related substances, should offer the highest possible resolution. Select as follows:

- Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes (40 µm particle size): Select for polishing in the laboratory or large-scale applications that require high resolution, and throughput.
- If the required selectivity is not available in a resin of larger particle size, try SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15 (15 µm particle size) for HIC separation.

### **Practical considerations for HIC separation**

This section covers detailed aspects of each step in a HIC separation, along with practical hints, and tips to improve resolution, and overall performance. In practice the steps in separation can be summarized as described in the green frame to the right:

### **Practical considerations**

- 1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 column volumes (CV) of start buffer or until the UV baseline, and conductivity is stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to the chosen salt concentration (and pH if necessary). Filter, and apply to the column.
- 3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the UV baseline, and conductivity is stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column.
- 4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV, increasing the proportion of elution buffer until the salt concentration reaches a minimum, that is, salt-free buffer (100% elution buffer). Alternatively, if gradient-making equipment is not available, elute bound proteins with up to 5 CV of elution buffer at a salt concentration lower than that in the start buffer. Repeat, lowering the salt content at each step until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
- 5. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of saltfree elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.
- 6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until conductivity reaches the required value.





We highlight these steps along with more detailed hints, and advice throughout this section.

Buffer volumes are expressed in CV — for example, 3 CV = 3 mL for a column with a 1 mL bed volume. Using CV to describe a separation profile facilitates method development and transfer of methods to columns of different dimensions. Often, you can reduce the number of CVs at each stage of separation with optimization. For example, you can reduce the gradient volume if you can maintain the resolution, and you might need less buffer for washing when separating reasonably clean samples.

Maintain sample, start and elution buffers, columns, and chromatographic equipment at the same, constant temperature throughout separation to ensure consistent and reproducible results.



Fig 2.2. HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Selection Kit and PreDictor<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Screening Kit.

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

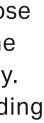
### **Screening for selectivity**

In the initial stages of development, you can save time, and sample by using small (1 mL), prepacked columns like those in the HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Selection Kit (Fig 2.2), or 96-well plates prepacked with different Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins like the PreDictor<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Screening Kit. You can quickly, and efficiently screen various resins for the required selectivity. This approach is helpful because — even if you know the properties of the target protein(s) — the final selectivity, binding capacity, and recovery depend largely on the resin's interaction with the specific protein of interest.

HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Selection Kit contains resins based on high-flow agarose (Capto<sup>™</sup> and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes):

- HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl (high sub)
- HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl
- HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> Octyl
- HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes
- HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes

You can use all HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns for small-scale purification, and each includes detailed protocols for use. The resins in these test kits are available for large-scale production so that you can easily transfer optimized methods to the scale of operation you need.







PreDictor<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Screening Kit (Fig 2.2) supports high-throughput process development (HTPD) by allowing parallel screening of multiple chromatographic conditions using a 96-well plate format. It contains resins based on highflow agarose Capto<sup>™</sup> and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes:

- Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl (high sub)
- Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl
- Capto<sup>™</sup> ButyI-S
- Capto<sup>™</sup> Octyl
- Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes
- Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes
- Before starting any HIC separation, establish the "salt stability window" for the sample. For example, add لى ا increasing amounts of salt to the crude sample to establish the concentration at which precipitation occurs. To avoid precipitation, make sure that the sample is below this salt concentration when applied to a column. See Appendix 1 for a guide to using ammonium sulfate for sample clean-up by precipitation. When possible, test the biological activity of the target protein to establish the concentration range over which activity can be maintained, and remember that you might need to desalt the sample before an activity test.

### Automated HIC resin screening, method development, and optimization

AKTA<sup>™</sup> chromatography system users can select method templates, and program the system to automatically perform separations using a range of columns and buffer conditions.

1. Sample preparation: Having established the salt stability window, begin with the highest salt concentration that retains biological activity and does not cause precipitation problems. Adjust the sample to the salt concentration of the start buffer to promote hydrophobic interaction. To avoid precipitation caused by the high salt concentrations that can occur locally when adding salt as a solid, add salt from a high-concentration stock solution. Adjust the pH of the sample directly. HIC is not very sensitive to pH conditions, so a complete buffer exchange is unnecessary.

- 2. Prepare start and elution buffers: 50 mM phosphate, pH 7.0. Add ammonium sulfate (up to 2 M, according to salt stability window) to the start buffer.
- 3. Wash each column in salt-free elution buffer before equilibrating in a high-salt start buffer. This avoids salt precipitation when storing columns in 20% ethanol.
- 4. Scout for optimum selectivity, applying the sample to each column under a range of salt concentrations. Collect eluate throughout the run. Choose a resin in which the target protein(s) elute within the gradient.
- 5. Scout for the lowest salt concentration in the start buffer that maximizes the binding capacity for the target protein, maintains or improves resolution, and minimizes contamination from other bound proteins.
- 6. Optimize for the steepest gradient that gives an acceptable resolution.
- 7. Optimize for the highest flow rate that maintains resolution and minimizes separation time. Check the recommended flow rates for the specific resin.
- 8. Optimize for the maximum sample load that you can apply while maintaining satisfactory resolution. In general, loading 20% to 30% of the total binding capacity of the column gives optimal resolution with gradient elution.

ᠭ

Once you optimize separation conditions, reduce separation time and buffer consumption by transferring to a step elution. You can often increase sample loads when using a step elution.





Figure 2.3 shows an example of resin screening on different HIC resins with various ligands and bead sizes prepacked in HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL columns. To minimize the need for sample conditioning after capture, we kept the buffer pH at pH 5.0. We selected the resin with Phenyl (high sub) because this resin showed the best selectivity for the target protein. We eluted the protein within the gradient and separated it from the bulk contaminants. Then, we optimized the conditions so that we could use a step elution to maximize the throughput, and concentration of the target protein before scaling up (Figure 3.23, Chapter 3 shows the optimized elution scheme and subsequent scale-up).

### Manual resin screening, method development, and optimization

You can use HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns with a syringe or peristaltic pump for manual resin screening, method development, and method optimization. However, using a syringe limits the degree to which you can develop a HIC separation because the separation mechanism is not a simple "on/off" process — to achieve a satisfactory separation, it requires some degree of gradient elution.

The methods here are optimized for use with 1 mL HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns, and you should adjust them if you are using another CV. Also, note that you might need to reduce flow rates depending on the viscosity of the sample or buffers.

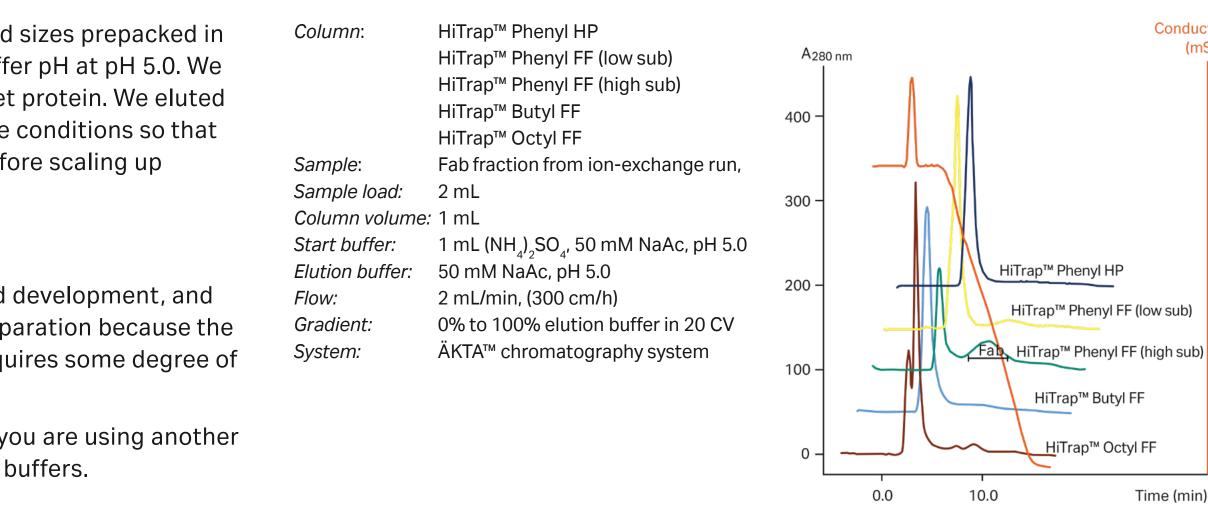


Fig 2.3. Resin screening on different HIC resins prepacked in HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL columns.





### Screening for selectivity using HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Selection Kit

- 1. Sample preparation: Having established the salt stability window, begin with the highest salt concentration that retains biological activity, and does not cause precipitation problems. Adjust the sample to the salt concentration of the start buffer to promote hydrophobic interaction. Add salt from a high concentration stock solution to avoid precipitation due to high salt concentrations that may occur locally if salt is added as a solid. Adjust the pH of the sample directly. Since HIC is not very sensitive to pH conditions, complete buffer exchange is not necessary.
- 2. Prepare start, and elution buffers: 50 mM phosphate, pH 7.0. Add ammonium sulfate (up to 2 M, according to salt stability window) to the start buffer.
- 3. Wash the column(s) with 5 to 10 mL salt-free elution buffer at 1 mL/min. This avoids salt precipitation when columns have been stored in 20% ethanol.
- 4. Equilibrate the column(s) with 5 to 10 mL start buffer at 1 mL/min.
- 5. Apply a known amount of the sample at 1 mL/min. Collect eluate.
- 6. Wash at 1 mL/min with at least 5 mL of start buffer or until no material appears in the eluent. Collect eluate.
- 7. Elute bound material with elution buffer at 1 mL/min (3 to 5 mL is usually sufficient, but other volumes might be required depending on the experiment conditions). Collect eluate.
- 8. Analyze all eluates (e.g., by activity assay), and determine purity and the amount bound to the column.
- 9. Select the resin to which the target protein(s) binds and can be eluted. If running a gradient, select the resin that gives optimal selectivity and resolution.

### Screening for binding (salt) conditions

- 1. Using the selected resin and buffer from the previous protocol, set up a series of start buffers at the same pH, but with reduced concentrations of ammonium sulfate in each buffer (e.g., from 1.5 M, 1.0 M, 0.5 M with the lowest concentration of 0.05 M).
- 2. Repeat steps 2 to 7 from the previous protocol for each salt concentration.
- 3. Determine the salt concentration that permits binding of the target protein(s) while contaminants either wash through or remain bound to the column. Determine the lowest salt concentration required to achieve complete elution of the target protein.



## ography:

### **Optimization of gradient, flow rate, and sample loading**

- 1. If you have gradient-making equipment, determine the steepest gradient that gives an acceptable resolution.
- 2. Begin with a gradient of 10 CV. Start from the salt concentration required to bind the target protein and go down to the lowest salt concentration required for elution, based on the values you determined during screening. Alternatively, begin with a gradient of 0% to 50% elution buffer and a 10 to 20 CV gradient volume.
- 3. To save time, determine the highest flow rate that maintains resolution, and minimizes separation time. Check the recommended flow rates for the specific resin.
- 4. Determine the maximum sample load that you can apply while maintaining resolution. In general, loading 20% to 30% of the total binding capacity of the column gives optimal resolution with gradient elution. You can often increase sample loads if the resolution is satisfactory or when using a step elution.
- To reduce separation time and buffer consumption, you can transfer to a step elution after establishing optimized separation conditions. You can usually increase sample loads when using a step elution.

### Sample properties and choice of ligand

The type of ligand and the nature of the target protein are highly significant parameters when determining the selectivity of a HIC resin. This means you need to empirically determine the most suitable ligand through screening experiments, preferably using the target protein. Even if you assume certain proteins have remarkably similar properties, they can interact quite differently in identical experimental conditions in a HIC separation, as demonstrated by the behavior of three monoclonal antibodies in Figure 2.4.

Column: Samples:

Sample preparation: Start buffer: Elution buffer: Gradient: Flow:

empirically.

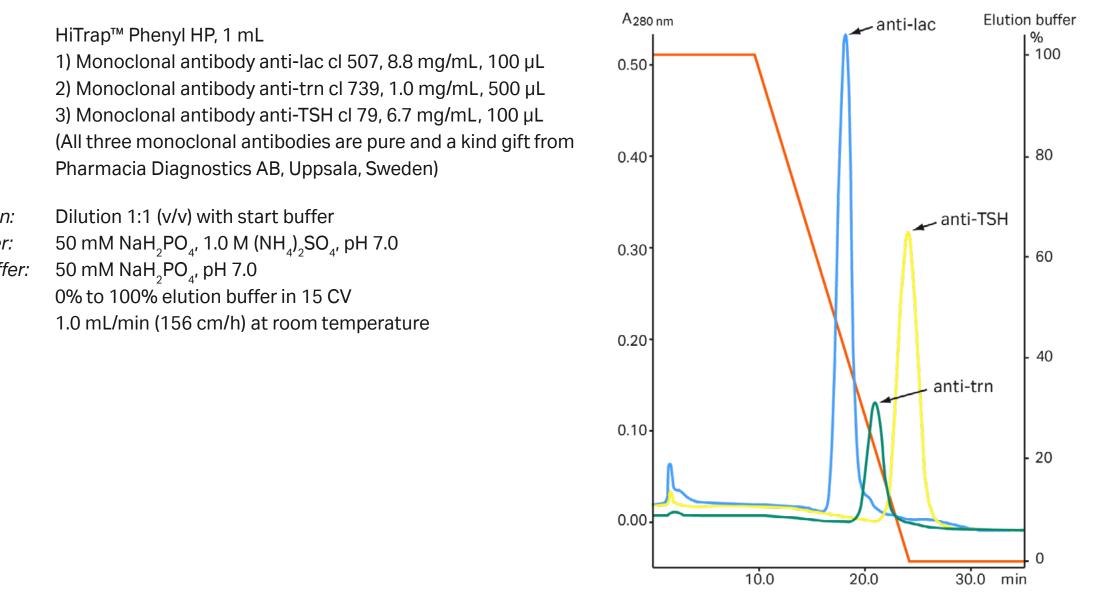
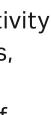


Fig 2.4. Three monoclonal antibodies interact differently under identical running conditions using a phenyl ligand. A suitable ligand must be determined



ography:

### Salt selection and buffer preparation

### Salts

In HIC the binding process is more selective than the elution process, making it essential to optimize the conditions of your start buffer. The right salt and salt concentration are the most important parameters that influence capacity, and final selectivity. The objective is to optimize conditions to achieve the required selectivity to bind the target protein(s) and ensure that most impurities pass through the column.

The influence of different salts on hydrophobic interaction is explained in Chapter 1. In practice, sodium, potassium, or ammonium sulfates effectively promote ligand-protein interactions in HIC and have a stabilizing influence on protein structure. Hence, the commonly used salts are  $(NH_{a})_{2}SO_{a}$ ,  $Na_{2}SO_{a}$ , NaCI, KCI, and  $CH_{3}COONH_{a}$ . Figure 2.5 shows an example of how different salts can affect selectivity. Here we obtained the best resolution of four standard proteins using 1.7 M ammonium sulfate in the start buffer.

As with resin selection, the choice of salt for a HIC separation is a matter of trial and error since each salt differs in its ability to promote hydrophobic interactions. As the concentration of a salt increases, the amount of protein bound will increase almost linearly up to a specific salt concentration and continue to increase exponentially at higher concentrations.

At a given concentration, ammonium sulfate often gives a good resolution when compared to other salts, and you can use it at concentrations up to 2 M.



hill

 $\widehat{\phantom{a}}$ 

You usually need concentrations up to 3 M when using sodium chloride.

Sodium sulfate is a good salting-out agent, but problems with protein solubility can exclude its use at high concentrations.

We do not recommend ammonium sulfate when working above pH 8.0.

Column: HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Butyl FF, 1 mL 1 mg/mL cytochrome C, 1 mg/mL lysozyme, 1 mg/mL  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsinogen, 3 mg ribonuclease A Sample: Sample load: 6 mg in 1 mL start buffer Start buffer: (A) 0.1 M sodium phosphate, 1.7 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0 (B) 0.1 M sodium phosphate, 1 M sodium sulfate, pH 7.0 (C) 0.1 M sodium phosphate, 3 M NaCl, pH 7.0 0.1 M sodium phosphate, pH 7.0 Elution buffer: 0.5 mL/min, 75 cm/h Flow: Gradient: 0% to 100% elution buffer in 10 CV AKTA<sup>™</sup> chromatography system System: Detection: 280 nm

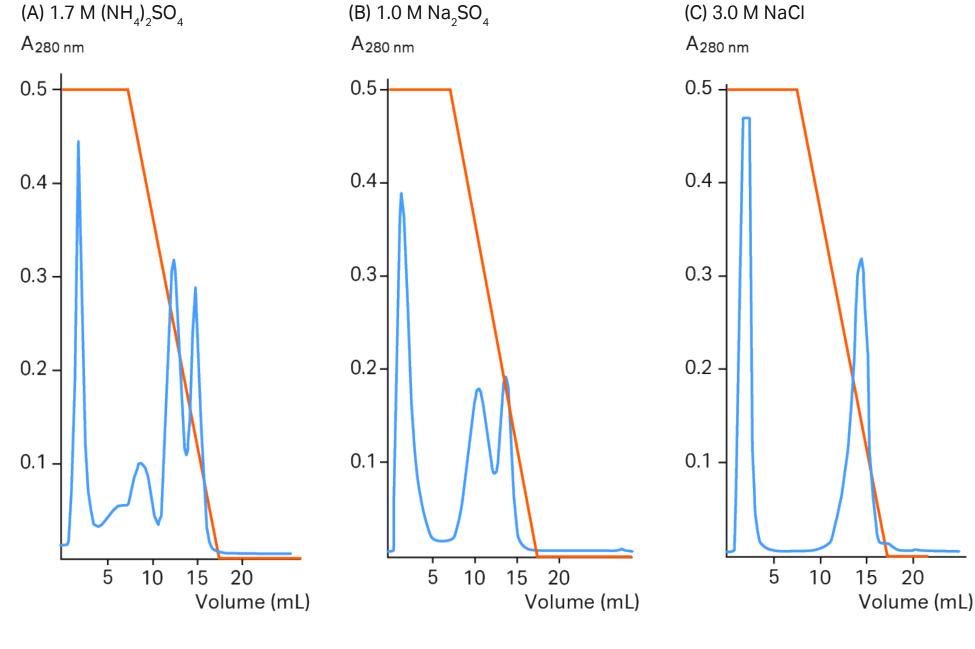


Fig 2.5. Different salts influence selectivity: elution takes place in the order of increasing elution volumes; cytochrome C, lysozyme, ribonuclease A,  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsinogen.



### Salt concentration

Figure 2.6 shows the influence of salt concentration on selectivity, and resolution. In this example, the target protein is the last peak to elute. The selectivity of the resin is satisfactory because the protein elutes within the gradient and is well-resolved from contaminants.

In (A), the target protein elutes in a sharp zone, but late in the gradient. Lowering the initial salt concentration (B) gives a similar resolution but ensures that contaminants that bound during earlier runs (with a higher salt concentration) now elute during the initial wash step. Only the target protein is bound, reducing the risk of a contaminant co-eluting with the target protein, and increasing the capacity of the column for the target protein. A run performed at even lower initial salt concentration (C) shows good selectivity but poor efficiency for the target protein. The sample does not bind strongly enough during sample application, resulting in significant peak broadening during elution.



If the target molecule elutes too late or not at all, and you cannot switch to a different resin, try binding in 50% less salt.

Some proteins begin to precipitate at high salt levels. You might need to reduce the salt concentration in the start buffer to prevent precipitation during the run. Loading the sample repetitively in small amounts can also help to avoid losing yield due to precipitation.

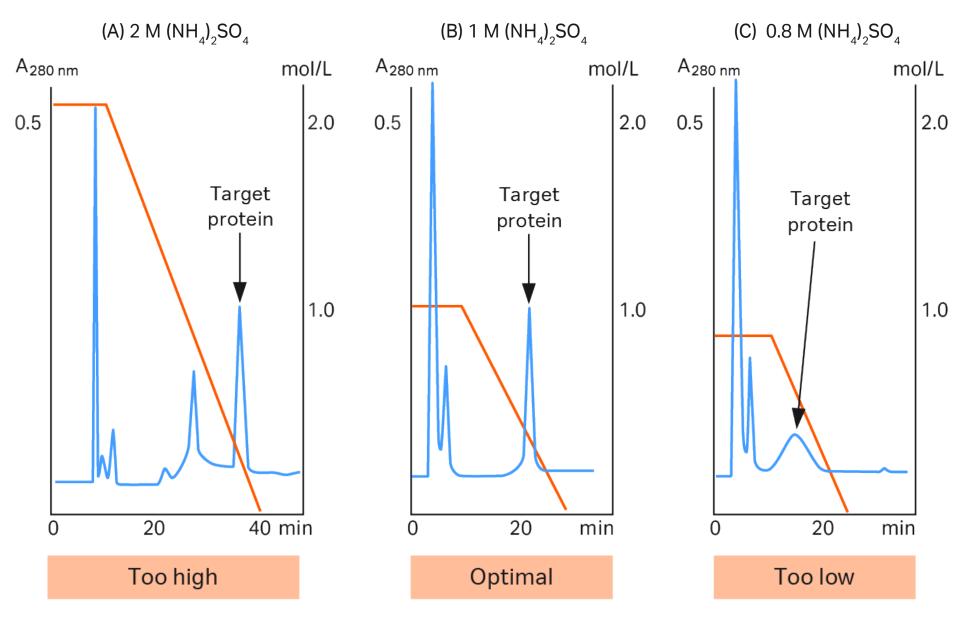


Fig 2.6. Salt concentration in the start buffer influences selectivity and resolution.

Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### **Buffer ions and pH**

Your choice of buffering ions is not critical to hydrophobic interaction. Most often, you may use phosphate buffers.

The pH chosen must be compatible with protein stability and activity and you should check for optimum pH conditions for each of your applications. However, between pH 5.0 to 8.5, pH values have less impact on the final selectivity and resolution of a HIC separation. An increase in pH weakens hydrophobic interactions, and retention of proteins changes more drastically at pH values above 8.5 or below 5.0.

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

کی

 $\overline{3}$ 

 $\widehat{\phantom{a}}$ 

Check for stability at the pH and salt concentrations you are using during the separation, especially if recovery of biological activity is a priority. Avoid extreme changes in pH or other conditions that can cause inactivation or even precipitation.

- Use a buffer concentration, typically 20 to 50 mM, that is sufficient to maintain buffering capacity pH during sample application, and changes in salt concentration.
- 5 Transfer the purified protein into a volatile buffer if you are planning to lyophilize the product (Table 2.1).
  - Prepare buffers at the same temperature at which they will be used to ensure the correct pH.

Filter buffers, and samples after including all salts, and additives. Use high-quality water, and chemicals. Use 1 μm filters for resins with particle sizes above 75 μm, 0.45 μm filters for 40 μm particles, and 0.22 μm filters for particles below 15 µm or when sterile or extra-clean samples are required. To avoid forming air bubbles in a packed column, and to ensure reproducible results, keep the column, and buffers sat at the same temperature when preparing for a run.

For samples with unknown hydrophobic properties, try the following:

Start buffer: 1.5 M ammonium sulfate, 50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.0

Elution buffer: 50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.0

### Table 2.1. Suitable volatile buffer systems

| рН                      | <b>Buffer system</b>            | pK <sub>a</sub> values for bufferin |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 3.3 to 4.3              | Formic acid                     | 3.75                                |
| 3.3 to 4.3; 4.8 to 5.8  | Formic acid / Pyridine          | 3.75; 5.25                          |
| 3.3 to 4.3; 8.8 to 9.8  | Formic acid / Ammonia           | 3.75; 9.25                          |
| 3.3 to 4.3; 9.3 to 10.3 | Formic acid / Trimethylamine    | 3.75; 9.81                          |
| 4.3 to 5.8              | Acetic acid / Pyridine          | 4.75; 5.25                          |
| 4.3 to 5.3; 7.2 to 8.2  | Acetic acid / N-ethylmorpholine | 4.75; 7.72                          |
| 4.3 to 5.3; 8.8 to 9.8  | Acetic acid / Ammonia           | 4.75; 9.25                          |
| 4.3 to 5.3; 9.3 to 10.3 | Acetic acid / Trimethylamine    | 4.75; 9.81                          |
| 5.9 to 6.9; 8.8 to 9.8  | Hydrogen carbonate / Ammonia    | 6.35; 9.25                          |
|                         |                                 |                                     |

<sup>1</sup> Ref: Handbook of chemistry and physics, 83rd edition, CRC, 2002–2003.





### **Buffer additives**

You can use additives to improve selectivity and resolution, for example, when a protein binds too strongly to a HIC resin. However, if you use them at high concentrations, you risk inactivating and/or denaturing the target protein. Additives can influence a separation by improving protein solubility, modifying protein conformation, and promoting elution of bound proteins. Water-miscible alcohols, detergents, and chaotropic salts (limited use) are the most widely used additives in HIC separations. You can find a list of typical additives in Table 2.2.

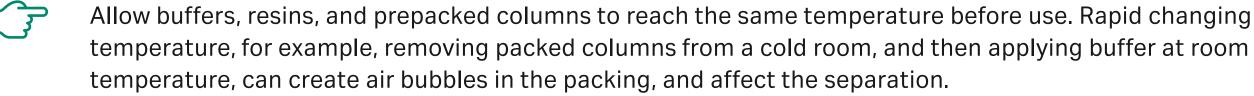


Run blank elution gradients with additives including checking their effect on the elution profile. That is, perform a run without loading any sample.

### **Column and resin preparation**

Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until UV baseline and conductivity is stable.

Use prepacked columns to ensure good performance and reproducible results. An evenly packed column ensures that component peaks do not broaden too much as the sample passes down the column, helping you get a good resolution.





Wash away storage solutions and/or preservatives before using any HIC resin. Wash columns with 10 CV of salt-free elution buffer before equilibrating with start buffer to avoid the risk of ethanol in the storage solution that leads to salt precipitation.

See Appendix 2 for details on column packing. The volume required for the packed bed depends on the amount of sample you are purifying and the resin's binding capacity. Pack a column with a five fold excess of the binding capacity required (total protein should be equivalent to 20% of the binding capacity), and a bed height up to 20 cm.



Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency, and peak symmetry (see Appendix 2).

### Table 2.2. Additives used to improve HIC separations

**Typical additives** 

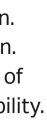
Additive type

| _ | Additive type    | i y pical addicives     | Enoot  |
|---|------------------|-------------------------|--|
| ו | Alcohols         | Up to 10% ethanol       | Alter buffer polarity. Decrease the surface tension            |
|   |                  | Up to 30% isopropanol   | of water to weaken the interaction,                            |
|   |                  | Up to 10% glycerol      | and cause dissociation.  |
|   |                  | 20 to 80 v/v % ethylene | Nonpolar regions compete with the proteins for                 |
| n |                  | glycol                  | hydrophobic ligands, causing dissociation.                     |
|   | Chaotropic salts | MgCl <sub>2</sub>       | Decrease the hydrophobic effect in solution to                 |
|   |                  | CaCl                    | weaken the interaction, and cause dissociation.                |
|   |                  | KI                      | Can also affect the conformation of the protein.               |
|   |                  | NaCNS                   | Ca <sup>2+</sup> increases stability during the purification o |
|   |                  | up to 8 M urea          | calcium-binding proteins; Mg <sup>2+</sup> decreases stabil    |
|   |                  |                         |  |

Effect









### **Sample preparation**

Correct sample and buffer preparation are essential to achieving optimal separation and maintaining column performance. There are simple steps you can take to clarify any sample before applying it to a column that will help avoid the risk of blockage, reduce the need for stringent washing procedures, maintain column performance, and avoid increases in backpressure. Appendix 1 outlines sample preparation techniques in more detail.

In HIC, the initial binding conditions also affect the final selectivity of the separation. Before starting any separation, establish the salt-stability window of the sample. For example, add increasing amounts of salt to the crude sample to determine the concentration where precipitation occurs. To avoid blockage, ensure that the sample is below the salt precipitation concentration when applying it to the column. *See* Appendix 1 for a guide to using ammonium sulfate in precipitation experiments.

When possible, test for the target protein's biological activity to establish the concentration range (remember that you might need to reduce high salt concentrations before assaying for activity). After establishing the salt stability window, begin with the highest salt concentration that retains biological activity without causing precipitation problems. You should keep the salt content and pH of the sample the same as those of the start buffer to ensure optimal binding conditions.

HIC requires little sample preparation work. Binding mostly takes place because of the high salt conditions, and the technique is fairly insensitive to pH conditions. You do not need to exchange the sample buffer before applying the sample to a HIC column; just ensure you have enough salt, and directly adjust the pH if needed. Adding salt as a solid can lead to local, high salt accumulations and precipitation – to avoid this risk, add salt from a high concentration stock solution.

Make sure your samples are clear, and free from particulate matter, especially if you are using resins with particle sizes 40 µm or less. To filter small sample volumes, you can use a syringe-tip filter of cellulose acetate, PVDF, or regenerated cellulose. For example, use Protein Prep syringe filters for AKTA<sup>™</sup> systems. Filter your samples after adding salt and any other additives.

کی

ᡗᡒ

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

 $\left( \begin{array}{c} \end{array} \right)$ 

 $\left( \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{F} \end{array} \right)$ 

Ensure that the sample is at the same temperature as buffers, columns, and chromatographic equipment.

Use buffer exchange (see Buffer exchange in Appendix 1) to remove chaotropic agents like guanidine hydrochloride and urea as they will inhibit hydrophobic interaction.

If the sample begins to precipitate at the salt concentration needed in the start buffer, reduce the salt concentration and divide the sample into smaller aliquots before application, but keep the concentration of the start buffer.

Lipids and other hydrophobic substances in the sample can interact with the resin, reducing binding capacity during the run, and in subsequent runs. Using a slightly less hydrophobic resin (such as Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl-S) as a "precolumn" is one way to remove these contaminants before the main separation.



Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Sample concentration and viscosity

Viscosity varies with temperature and will increase at very high salt concentrations. A sample's solubility or viscosity can limit the quantity that you can apply to a column. High sample viscosity can cause an irregular flow pattern that results in broad, distorted peaks, and problems with backpressure. The critical parameter is the viscosity of the sample relative to the viscosity of the eluent.



Dilute viscous samples. If you cannot use dilution, try using a lower salt concentration or a resin with a larger particle size. If nucleic acid contaminants are causing high viscosity, *see* Appendix 9 for advice on their removal.



Samples should generally not exceed 50 mg/mL protein, but this can vary depending on your type of sample, and chromatography resin.

### Sample application and wash

Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if necessary). Filter, and apply it to the column.

Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline and conductivity are stable – this indicates that all unbound material has washed through the column.

For efficient binding, you should keep the sample at the same salt concentration as the start buffer. Since the sample binds near the top of the column, you can use a relatively large sample volume without affecting the separation if the application conditions are correct.



Apply the samples directly to the column using a chromatography system, peristaltic pump, or syringe. The choice of equipment depends on your sample volume, size, type of column, type of HIC resin, and the requirements for gradient accuracy during elution.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Sample load

Sample load (mass) is of greater importance than sample volume. The amount of sample that you can apply to a column depends on the resin's binding capacity and the degree of resolution you need. Binding capacity is determined by the resin, protein properties, the binding conditions, size and shape of the molecules, pore size of the matrix, and to a lesser extent by flow rate, temperature, and pH.

The width of the peaks is directly related to the amount of substance present, making sample load a major influence on resolution. To achieve good resolution, keep the total amount of protein bound to the resin below the total binding capacity of the packed column.



For optimal resolution with gradient elution, you can apply up to 30% of the total binding capacity of the column. You can increase the sample loads if the resolution is satisfactory or when you are using a step elution.

For example, you can increase capacity by decreasing flow rates, or by optimizing the start conditions to favor target protein(s) binding and minimize contaminant binding.

Capacity decreases with increasing flow rates, so you need to find a balance between the maximum dynamic binding capacity (DBC), and a fast separation, especially with large sample volumes.

Capacity also decreases for molecules with a very large diameter or length – for example, protein complexes  $> M_r 400\,000$ , asymmetric proteins, and DNA. These molecules cannot penetrate the matrix pores, which limits their interaction primarily to the hydrophobic groups on the surface of the matrix. Since the exact distribution of pore sizes in some matrices can vary, and the apparent size of a molecule can vary depending on the buffer conditions, there is no distinct molecular weight cut-off point when molecules can or cannot penetrate the matrix pores.

### Sample volume

As long as the salt content of your sample and start buffer ensure adequate binding conditions, the binding technique of HIC is independent of sample volume. You can apply large volumes of dilute solutions like fractions from a cell culture supernatant directly to a HIC resin without prior concentration.



36

### Temperature

The role temperature plays is complex. In practice, this means that working at a constant temperature improves reproducibility and that you might not be able to reproduce a separation developed at room temperature in cold-room conditions or *vice versa*.

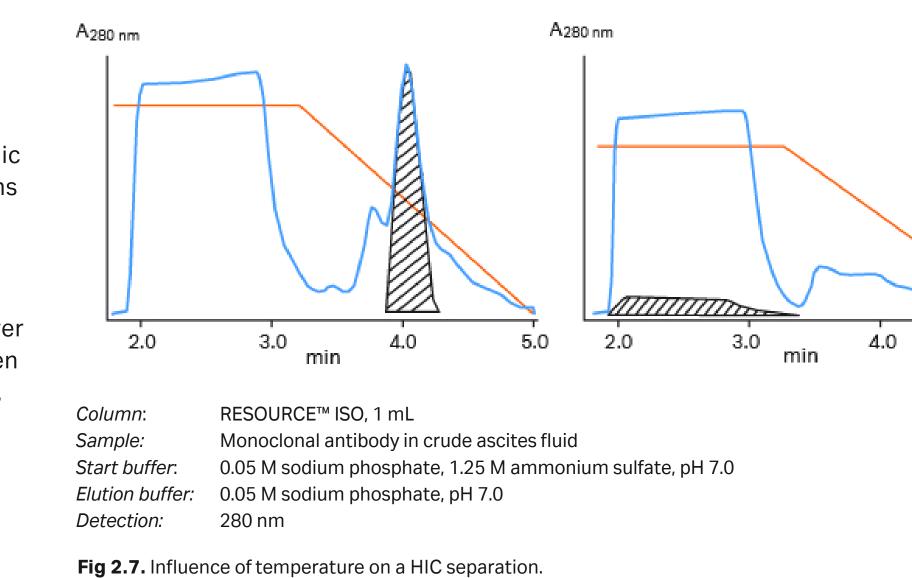
Figure 2.7 demonstrates the importance of having your sample, start and elution buffers, columns, and chromatographic equipment at the same temperature. We performed both separations at room temperature (23°C) in identical conditions except for the temperature of the sample (23°C or 4°C). With all components at the same temperature, we bound the target protein and eluted it in the middle of the gradient. With the samples at 4°C, the target protein eluted in the flowthrough.



In most cases, increasing the temperature enhances hydrophobic interactions. This means that working at lower temperatures (typically below 10°C) can minimize the aggregation caused by hydrophobic interactions between sample components. To improve solubility, you can try lowering the temperature instead of adding detergents.



Ensure that the sample, column, start and elution buffers are at the same temperature. Note that temperature also affects the viscosity of your sample and buffers.



Sample: 4°C. Buffers and equipment: 23°C.

Sample, buffers and equipment: 23°C





### Elution

Researchers elute bound proteins with controlled decreases in salt concentration, using a linear or step elution selected according to the aim of the separation:

- 1. Linear gradient elution
  - a. High-resolution separation or analysis
  - b. Determination of conditions for a step elution
  - c. Optimized gradient elution at an increased speed while retaining required resolution
- 2. Step elution
  - a. Faster separation time, reduced buffer consumption
  - b. Group separation

### Linear gradient elution

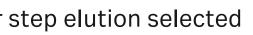
### Aim: High-resolution separation, resin screening, screening for optimal salt conditions

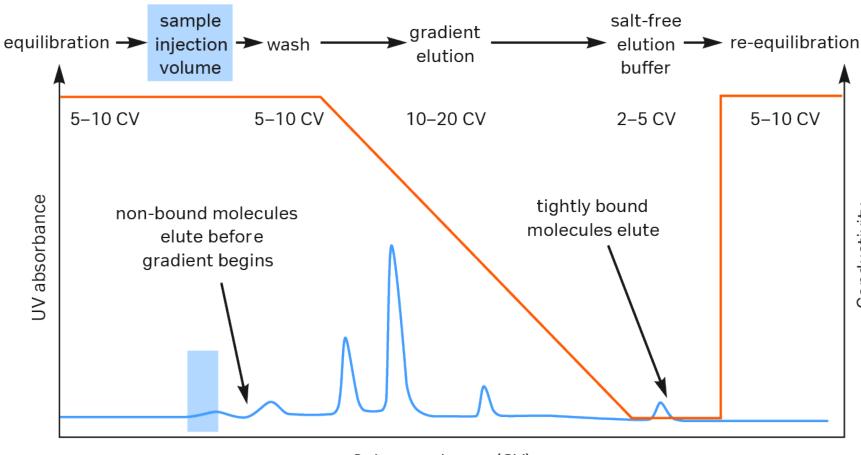
Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV. Increase the proportion of elution buffer until the salt concentration reaches a minimum, that is, salt-free buffer (100% B).

You can usually use linear salt gradients for elution, as shown in Figure 2.8. Always use a linear gradient when starting with an unknown sample (when as many components as possible are bound to the column and eluted differentially to see a total protein profile). Decreasing the salt content of the running buffer weakens the hydrophobic interactions, and the bound substances begin to elute. The elution buffer is usually the same buffer and pH as the start buffer but without the high salt component.



We recommended using linear gradient elution during method development. With a suitable chromatography system, you can easily prepare reproducible linear salt gradients. After, you can use the results as a basis for optimizing the separation.





Column volumes (CV)

Fig 2.8. Typical HIC separation using linear gradient elution. The UV (protein), and conductivity (salt) traces show the elution of protein, peaks, and the changes in salt concentration during elution.



# Hydroph tography

There are a few ways that changes in gradient elution can alter the retention of hydrophobic proteins on resins:

- Long, shallow gradients give maximum separation between peaks, but separation times will be longer, and there will be greater peak broadening.
- Short, steep gradients give faster separations, and sharper peaks, but peaks will be eluted closer together.
- Peaks eluted later in the gradient tend to be slightly broader than those that elute earlier.

Select the steepest gradient to give an acceptable resolution. Figure 2.9 shows the effects of changing gradient slope.

If you decrease gradient elution volumes, you might need to proportionally decrease the sample load to maintain  $\widehat{\phantom{a}}$ the same resolution. If you increase the sample load (within the total binding capacity of the column), you might need to increase gradient volumes to maintain resolution.

You can easily form gradients using purpose-designed equipment like ÄKTA™ chromatography systems that automatically control the mixing of solutions you supply to a column. Alternatively, some systems use two separate pumps for start and elution buffers, or a single pump in combination with a switch valve to mix the buffers. The shortest flow path between a mixer and the top of a column will help you form gradients accurately.

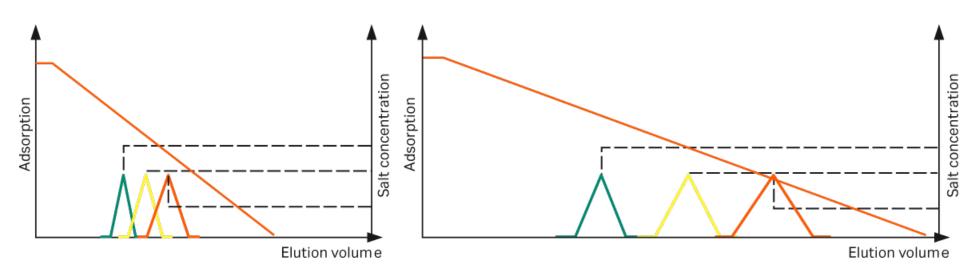


Fig 2.9. Schematic chromatograms show the effect of decreasing gradient slope.



### Step elution

Elute bound proteins with up to 5 CV of elution buffer at a salt concentration lower than that in the start buffer. Repeat, lowering the salt content at each step until you have eluted the target protein(s).

As shown in Figure 2.10, you may perform step elution by sequentially adding the elution buffer with decreasing salt concentration:

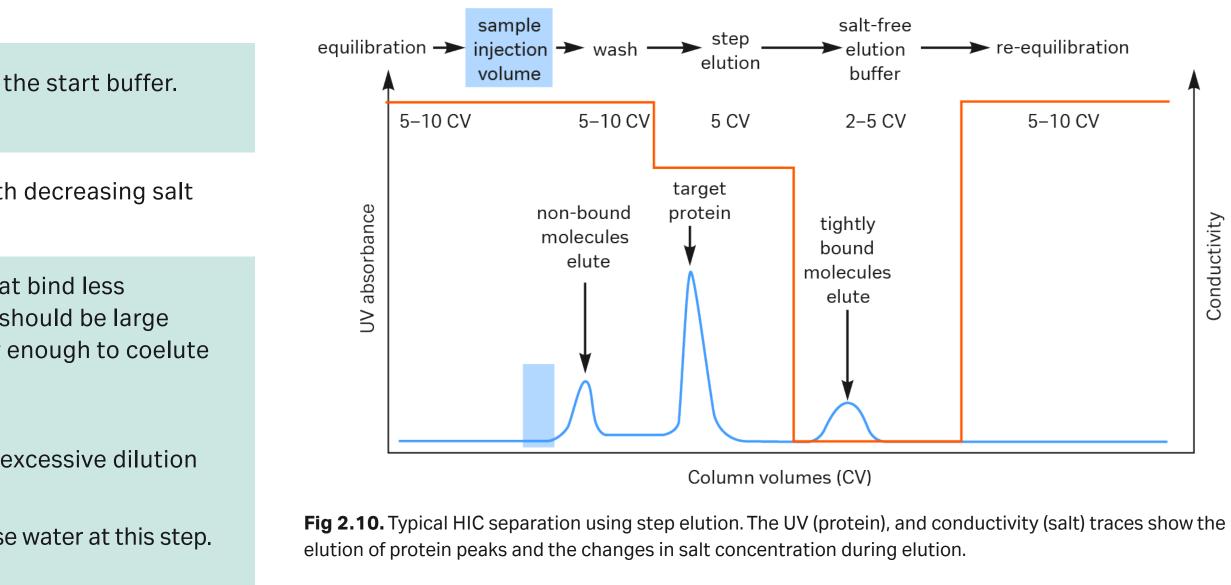
Step 1: Optimize the salt concentration, and volume of elution buffer to elute all compounds that bind less strongly to the resin than the target protein(s). Note: The salt concentration and buffer volume should be large enough to elute the contaminating weaker binding substances but keep salt concentration low enough to coelute the peak of interest.

Step 2: Decrease the salt concentration until the target protein(s) elutes.

Note: You should keep the salt concentration low enough to elute the target protein(s) without excessive dilution but keep it high enough to prevent the coelution of strongly bound contaminants.

Step 3: Further decrease the salt concentration to elute all remaining contaminants. You can also use water at this step.

Step 4: Re-equilibrate the column in the start buffer to prepare for the next run.







### Aim of a step elution: Reduced separation time, reduced buffer consumption

After you have optimized a HIC separation using gradient elution, changing to a step elution can reduce the total number of CVs needed for separation. This can speed up separation times and reduce buffer consumption while helping you get the purity level you need. Scientists often use step elution like this for routine, large-scale separation.

### Aim of a step elution: group separation

In a group separation, you can separate target proteins, and contaminants in one step elution. Due to their hydrophobic properties, you can bind proteins and contaminants to the column, concentrate them, and rapidly separate them.

As in a normal step elution, you should choose conditions that will maximize the binding of the target proteins (or known contaminants) during sample application. You can either collect the fraction of interest in the wash or elute it in an enriched, concentrated form. In both cases, you only need a single buffer change.



لى ا

Stepwise elution can be good for small-scale applications. If you keep the eluting strength of the buffer high enough to avoid co-elution with more strongly bound contaminants, you can elute the target protein in a more concentrated form.

Using a step elution with optimized salt concentration during sample application (to minimize binding of contaminants) often significantly improves the purity level of your final product.

Step elution can be a technically simple alternative if you do not have gradient-making equipment available. However, you should take care when designing the steps and interpreting your results. Substances eluted by a sharp change in salt conditions can elute close together, giving a false peak that contains several components. Since they frequently have more than one component, peaks tend to have sharp fronts and pronounced tailing. Because of this tailing, false peaks can appear if you introduce a change in salt concentration too early.



We recommend using a linear salt gradient when developing a new method. After characterizing the chromatographic behavior of the target protein(s), it will be easier for you to use a step elution to increase resolution in the area where the peak of interest elutes.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### **Flow rates**

You can vary the maximum flow rate depending on the stage of the separation. For example, lower flow rates allow time for binding or elution, while higher flow rates can save time during equilibration, washing, and re-equilibration. The rigidity of the resins and pressure specifications of your equipment will primarily limit the flow rates that you can use.

We recommend flow rates for each HIC resin (see Chapter 3). During separation, aim for the highest flow rate that maintains resolution, and minimizes separation time. For example, if the peaks are well separated at a low flow rate, increase the flow rate to save time. Alternatively, if the peaks are well resolved, you might be able to load more samples and achieve a higher capacity without losing significant resolution. Figure 2.11 shows an example of how increasing flow rate can influence resolution on a HIC column.

You may measure flow rate in simple linear terms like mL/min — but when scaling up or comparing results between columns of different sizes, it is useful to use linear flow rate (flow velocity): cm/h (*see* Appendix 4). As far as the effects of flow rate are concerned, you can compare results obtained at the same linear flow on different size columns.



Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the resin or prepacked column.

Higher flow rates and viscous buffers increase operating pressure and buffer viscosity increases when running at 4°C. Check the maximum operating pressure of the packed column and set the upper pressure limit on the chromatography system accordingly.

### **Flow control**

Accurate, reproducible flow control is essential for good resolution and reproducibility.

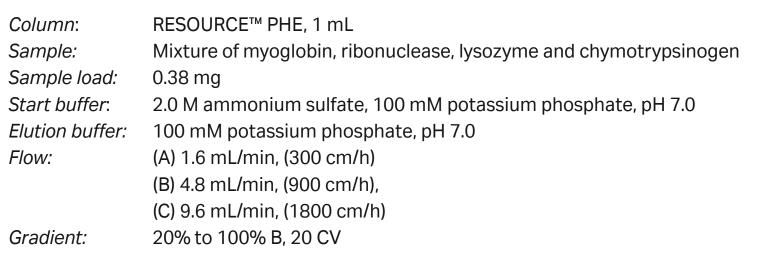
(J

Use a pump within a chromatography system (instead of a peristaltic pump) to take full advantage of the rigidity, and excellent flow properties of resins like Capto™ and Capto™ ImpRes.



Always pump buffer onto a column instead of drawing the buffer through the column with the pump below. This reduces the risk of bubble formation that suction can cause.

If you are using a column that was packed in normal laboratory conditions, always use a lower flow rate for separation than the flow rate you used for column packing. This helps you apply your sample without increasing the pressure and shrinking the column bed. *See* Appendix 2 for column packing information.



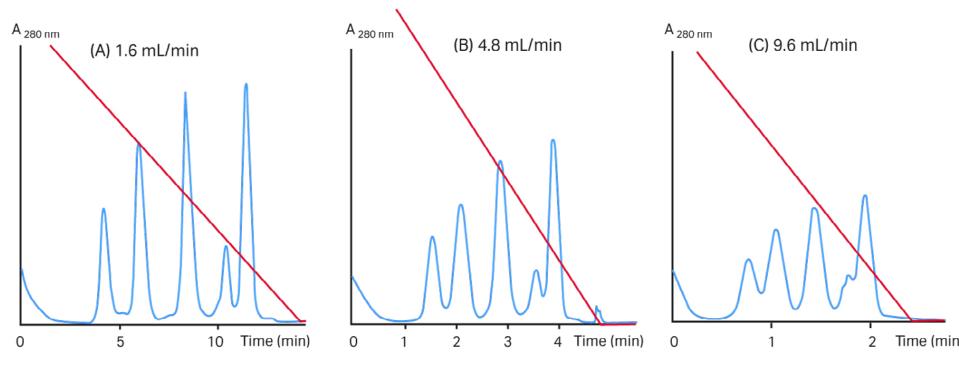


Fig 2.11. Influence of increasing flow rate on resolution when separating a model protein mixture on RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> PHE column.



### Wash and re-equilibration

Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.

You can effectively elute most bound proteins by washing the HIC resins with a salt-free buffer solution. Include a saltfree wash step at the end of each run to remove any molecules that are still bound to the resin. Keep an eye on the UV absorbance so that you can shorten or lengthen the wash step as needed.



Sometimes, the hydrophobic interaction is so tight that you might need to use harsher conditions to remove all bound material — for example, 0.5 to 1.0 M NaOH, 70% ethanol, or 30% isopropanol. You need to follow these wash steps with water or salt-free buffer wash before re-equilibrating the column with a high-salt start buffer.

Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until conductivity reaches the required value.

After washing, a re-equilibration step prepares the column for the next separation. Whenever possible, monitor the conductivity to see when your start conditions are reached. Then you can shorten or lengthen the re-equilibration step as needed.



You might need to clean your resins if you observe a colored band at the top of the column, a space between the upper adapter and the bed surface, a loss in resolution, or a significant increase in backpressure. We provide a general cleaning procedure for each HIC resin in Chapter 3 and outline procedures for removing severe contamination (see Appendix 9). In all cases, prevention is better than cure — we recommend cleaning your resins routinely.

### **Analyzing results and further steps**

Analyzing the results of your first separation will help you see if you can improve the conditions to increase yield, achieve higher purity, speed up separation, or increase the amount of sample that can be processed in a single run.

Samples eluted using a salt gradient contain a range of salt concentrations. If your assay is sensitive to changes in salt concentration, be sure to dilute or desalt fractions before analysis. We outline common analytical in Appendix 7.



ography

## Scaling up

For fast separations, it can be easier to repeat separation several times on a small column and pool the fractions of interest instead of scaling up to a larger column. However, you might want to use a larger column if you are routinely processing large sample volumes. Table 2.3 shows general guidelines for scaling up and Fig 2.12 shows available columns and other formats from Cytiva.

When scaling up a HIC separation, follow the points below to ensure the same cycle time for small-scale and larger-scale separations.

- 1. Optimize the separation at a small scale.
- 2. Maintain the bed height, sample concentration, and ratio of sample volume: volume of resin.
- 3. Increase the column volume by increasing the diameter of the column.
- 4. Run the separation at the same flow velocity (see Appendix 4) that you used on the smaller column with the same ratio of gradient volume: column volume.
- کی Whenever possible, develop your separation method on the resin that you are planning to use at a larger scale.
- $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ If you are performing production-scale separations, note that all the HIC resins mentioned in this handbook (Capto<sup>™</sup>, Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes, Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance, Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow, and SOURCE<sup>™</sup>) meet the needs for throughput and cleaning-in-place (CIP) at industrial scale.

See Appendix 2 for column selection and column packing.

### **Equipment selection**

See Appendix 3 for a guide to selecting systems for HIC.



 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

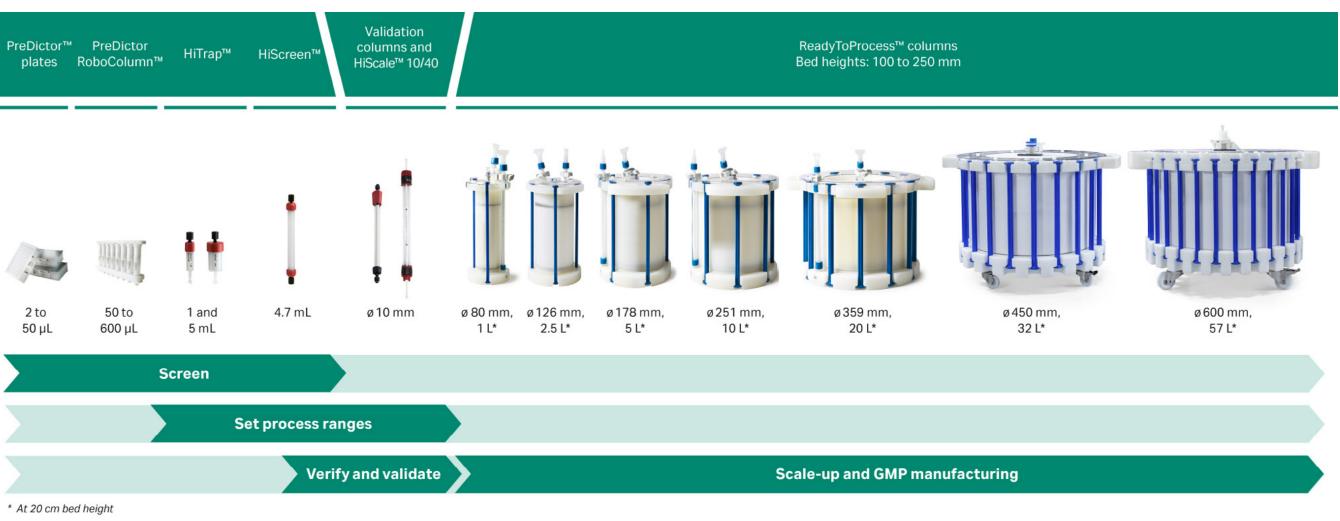
Always rinse your chromatography equipment as thoroughly as possible after using HIC, including the valves, and tubing. The high salt concentrations can interfere with separations, damage equipment, and affect buffer flow.

### Table 2.3. Guidelines for scaling up

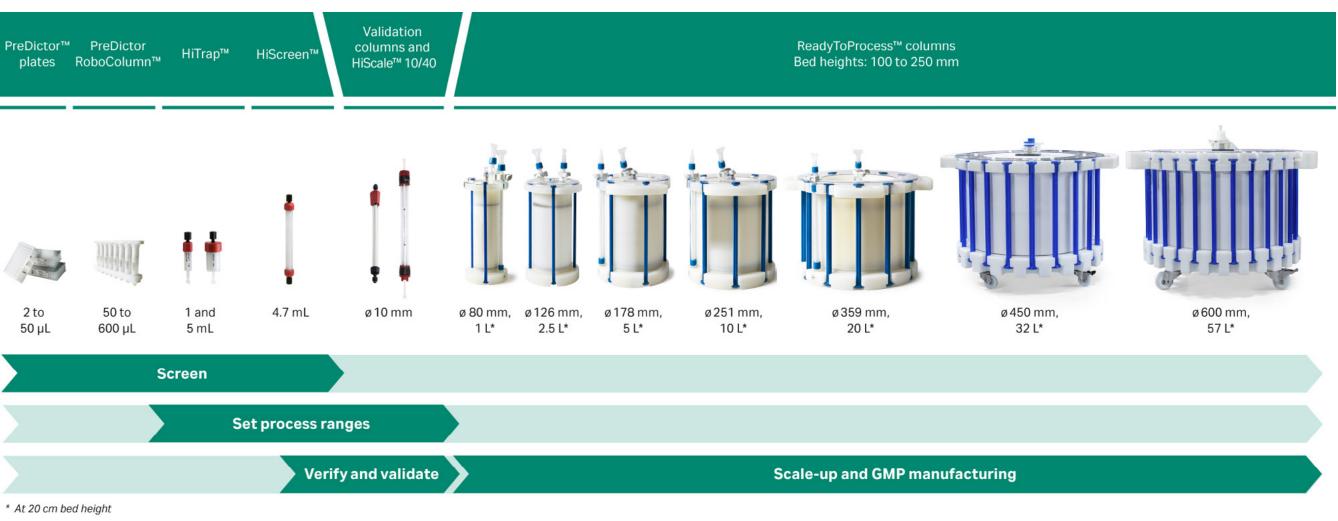
### Maintain

- Column be
- Flow veloc
- Sample co

Gradient e







| 1              | Increase                        |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| oed height     | Column volume (column diameter) |
| city (cm/h)    | Volumetric flow rate (mL/min)   |
| oncentration   | Sample load                     |
| elution volume |                                 |

(column volumes used for the gradient)

Fig 2.12. The variety of columns available in Cytiva is based on your manufacturing requirements.



## **Caring for HIC resins**

Washing between each separation with 5 to 10 CV of distilled water should be enough to keep your resin in good condition. However, using columns for some time can allow for precipitated proteins or other contaminants to build up.

To know if your columns need cleaning, look for a colored band at top of the column, a space between the upper adapter, and the bed surface, a loss in resolution, or a significant increase in backpressure. We provide a general cleaning procedure for each HIC resin (see Chapter 3), along with procedures we recommend for removing severe contamination, see Appendix 9.

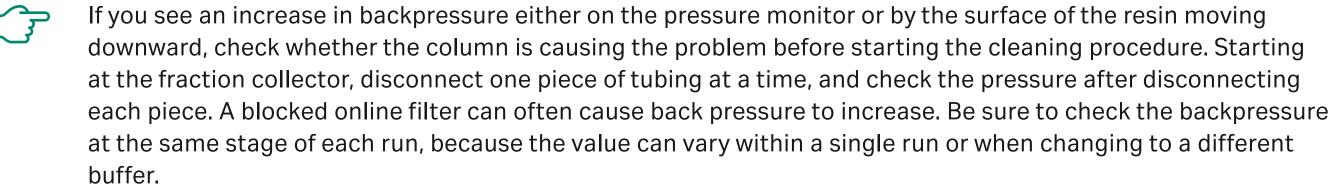
Remember that prevention is better than cure — we always recommend cleaning your resin routinely. See Appendix 1 for more details on sample preparation.



Always use filtered buffers, samples, and cleaning solutions to reduce the need for additional column maintenance.



Always degas buffers, and keep your buffers, columns, and samples at the same temperature to avoid bubble formation in the column and ensure reproducible results.

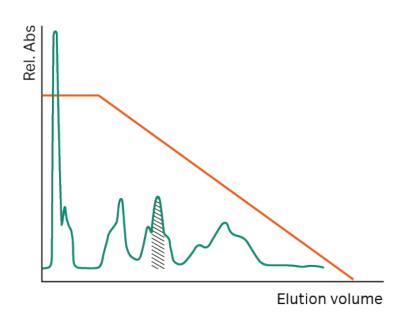




Store your resins and packed columns in 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth.

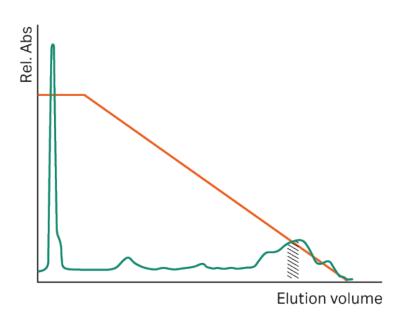
# Hydrophob pha tography

### Troubleshooting



# The desired HIC separation: Gradient elution resolves the target protein.

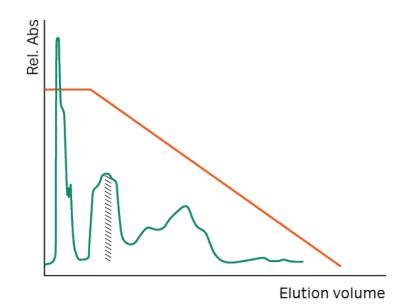
The rest of this section focuses on ways you can troubleshoot a suboptimal HIC separation.



# Target protein elutes near the end of the gradient: Poor resolution.

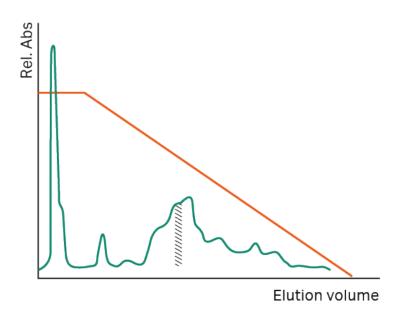
Repeat the separation with a lower salt concentration in the start buffer or use salt with a lower salting-out strength (see the Hofmeister series on Chapter1). If neither improves selectivity, try using a resin with a different ligand or with a lower degree of ligand substitution.

A decrease in the initial salt concentration weakens the binding, resulting in earlier elution of the protein. But since the contaminants elute very close to the protein of interest, this might not improve selectivity.



### Target protein elutes early in the gradient: Poor resolution.

Repeat the separation at a higher salt concentration in the start buffer, or use a salt with a higher saltingout strength (*See* the Hofmeister series on Chapter1). If neither improves selectivity, try using a resin with a different ligand or with a higher degree of ligand substitution.



# The target protein is eluted in the middle of the gradient: Poor resolution.

Optimize the gradient around the target protein. For example, you can use a segmented gradient with a shallower region around the target protein. Also, consider using additives (see additives in Chapter2). If this does not improve the resolution, try using an alternate chromatography technique like ion exchange for further purification.



| Situation   | Cause   | Remed       |
|---|---|-------------|
| Reduced or no flow through the column.            | The outlet is closed, or the pumps are not working.   | Open the    |
|   | Blocked filter, end-piece, adapter, or tubing.  | Remove, a   |
|   | Lipoproteins or protein aggregates have precipitated.                                       | Remove li   |
|   | Protein precipitation in the column.  | Reduce sa   |
|   | The sample is too viscous.  | Dilute wit  |
|   | Microbial growth as occurred in the column.   | Follow the  |
| · · · ·   | Large mixing spaces at the top of the after column.   | Adjust the  |
| major peaks.                                      | Incorrect salt conditions.  | Check bin   |
|   | Suboptimal elution conditions (e.g., gradient too steep; flow rate too high).               | Alter eluti |
|   | Poorly packed column.   | Check col   |
|   | Column overloaded with the sample.  | Decrease    |
|   | Precipitation of proteins in the column.  | Follow cle  |
| Proteins do not bind or elute as expected.        | Incorrect salt conditions.  |             |
|   | Proteins or lipids have precipitated on the column or column filter.                        | Clean the   |
|   | Sample changed during storage. Protein might be unstable or inactive in the elution buffer. | Prepare fr  |
|   | Incomplete column equilibration.  | Repeat or   |
|   | Proteins are forming aggregates and bind strongly to the resin.                             | Use lower   |
|   | Sample, buffer, or temperature conditions are different from previous runs.                 | Check cor   |
| Protein elutes later than buffer. expected or not | Salt concentration too high.  | Decrease    |
| at all.   | Hydrophobic interactions strong.  | Use resin   |
|   | Salt concentration of sample and buffer is too low.   | Increase s  |
| wash phase).                                      | Column equilibration incomplete.  | Repeat or   |

### edy

ne outlet. Check the pumps for signs of leakage. If you are using a peristaltic pump, check the tubing as well.

, and clean the blocked piece or replace it if possible. Always filter samples, and buffer before use.

e lipoproteins, and aggregates in sample preparation or use a scavenger column with lower hydrophobicity (see Appendix 1). Follow the cleaning procedures in Appendix 9.

salt concentration in the start buffer. Follow cleaning procedures to remove precipitated proteins (see Appendix 9).

ith buffer. Keep protein concentration below 50 mg/mL.

he cleaning procedures in Appendix 9. Always filter buffers. Store with 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth when not in use.

he top adapter to the resin surface if necessary. Reduce all post-column volume.

inding conditions. Prepare new solutions.

ution conditions by using a shallower gradient and reducing the flow rate.

column efficiency (see Appendix 2). Repack if needed. Use prepacked columns.

se sample load.

eleaning procedures (see Appendix 9). Reduce salt concentration in buffer or apply sample in aliquots at lower salt concentration while maintaining salt in the buffer.

onditions required. Prepare new solutions.

ne column and replace or clean the filter. Check pH and salt stability of the sample.

fresh samples. Determine the stability of the protein.

or lengthen equilibration until conductivity, and pH is constant.

ver salt concentrations. Consider using additives to reduce hydrophobic interactions (see Buffer additives in Chapter 2).

conditions.

se salt concentration in the elution buffer.

in with lower hydrophobicity or lower too ligand density. Consider using an additive to reduce hydrophobic interaction (see Buffer additives in this chapter).

e salt in the sample, and buffer.

or prolong the equilibration step until conductivity is constant.



| Situation                                      | Cause  | Remed                    |  |
|--|--|--------------------------|--|
| Leading or very rounded peaks in the           | Channeling in the column.  | Repack co                |  |
| chromatogram.                                  | Column overloaded with sample.   | Decreased                |  |
|  | Column contaminated.   | Clean the                |  |
| Peaks are tailing.                             | Column packed too loosely.   | Check colu               |  |
| Peaks have a leading edge.                     | Compressed column packing  | Check colu               |  |
| Resin or beads appear in the eluent.           | Compressed column packing.   | Check colu               |  |
|  | The bed support end piece is loose or broken.  | Tighten or               |  |
|  | Column operated at too high pressure.  | Do not exc               |  |
|  | The resin was damaged during column packing.   | Do not use               |  |
| Low recovery of activity, but normal recovery  | Protein may be unstable or inactive in the buffer.                                   |                          |  |
| of protein.                                    | Enzyme separated from co-factor or similar.  |                          |  |
| Protein yields are lower than expected.        | Protein may be degraded by proteases.  | Add protea<br>proteases. |  |
|  | Adsorption to filter during sample preparation.                                      | Use anoth                |  |
|  | Sample precipitates.   | Check salt               |  |
|  | Proteins are not eluting.  | Consider ι               |  |
| Peaks too small.                               | The sample absorbs poorly at the chosen wavelength.                                  | lf appropri              |  |
|  | Different assay conditions have been used before and after the chromatographic step. |                          |  |
|  | Excessive peak broadening.   | Check the                |  |
| More sample is recovered than expected.        | Protein co-eluting with other substances.  | Optimize o               |  |
| More activity is recovered than was applied to | Different assay conditions have been used before and after the chromatography step.  | Use the sa               |  |
| the column.                                    | Removal of inhibitors during separation.   | Desalt the               |  |
|  |  |                          |  |

### edy

column using thinner resin slurry. Check column packing (see Appendix 2).

sed sample load, and repeat.

ne column.

olumn efficiency (see Appendix 2). Repack using a lower flow rate. Use prepacked columns.

olumn efficiency (see Appendix 2). Repack using a lower flow rate. Use prepacked columns.

olumn efficiency (see Appendix 2). Repack using a lower flow rate. Use prepacked columns.

or replace the bed support end piece.

exceed recommended operating pressure for resin or column.

use magnetic stirrers during equilibration.

ine the pH and salt stability of the protein.

pooling aliquots from the fractions, and repeating the assay.

tease inhibitors to the sample, and buffers to prevent proteolytic digestion. Run sample through a resin like Benzamidine 4 Fast Flow (high sub) to remove trypsin-like serine es.

other type of filter.

alt conditions and adjust to improve sample solubility.

r using additives to reduce hydrophobic interactions (see Buffer additives in this chapter). Use a less hydrophobic resin.

priate, check the absorbance range on the monitor. If satisfactory, use a different wavelength (e.g., 214 nm instead of 280 nm).

same assay conditions for all assays.

he column packing. Repack if necessary.

e conditions to improve resolution. Check buffer conditions used for assay before, and after the run. Check selection of resin. Check purity of the protein.

same assay conditions for all assays.

he original sample before measuring activity, as cell lysates, and extracts often contain low molecular weight substances that can affect activity.



| Situation                                | Cause   | Remed                    |
|--|---|--------------------------|
| Backpressure increases during a run or   | Bed compressed.   | Repack or                |
| successive runs.                         | Sample is too viscous.  | Dilute with              |
|  | Sample not filtered properly.   | Clean the d              |
|  | Microbial growth.   | Follow clea              |
|  | Turbid sample.  | Improve sa               |
|  | Precipitation of protein in the column filter and/or at the top of the bed. | Clean usin               |
|  | Precipitation of lipoproteins at increased salt concentration.              | Remove lip               |
| Air bubbles in the bed.                  | Buffers not properly degassed.  | Degas buff               |
|  | Column packed or stored at a cool temperature, and then warmed up.          | Remove sr<br>from sunlig |
| Cracks in the bed.                       | Large air leak in the column.   | Check all c              |
| Negative peaks at the solvent front.     | Refractive index effects.   | Exchange                 |
| Unexpected peaks in the                  | Buffer impurities.  | Clean the I              |
| Peaks appear on blank elution gradients. | Incomplete elution of the previous sample.                                  | Wash the c               |
| Spikes in chromatogram                   | Air bubbles trapped in UV monitor flow cell.                                | Always use               |
|  | Buffer impurities.  | Use high-q               |
|  |   |                          |

### edy

or replace the column. Check sample preparation.

vith buffer. Keep protein concentration below 50 mg/mL.

e column, filter the sample, and repeat.

leaning procedures (see Appendix 9). Always filter buffers. Store with 20% ethanol to prevent microbial growth.

sample preparation (see Appendix 1).

sing recommended methods. Clean or replace the filter or use a new column. Reduce the salt concentration of the start buffer.

lipoproteins before chromatography by adding 10% dextran sulfate (final 0.2%), and 1 M calcium chloride (final 0.5 M).

uffers thoroughly.

small bubbles bypassing degassed buffer through the column. Take special care if buffers are used after storage in a fridge or cold room. Do not allow the column to warm up nlight or a heating system. Repack the column (see Appendix 2).

I connections for leaks.Repack the column (see Appendix 2).

ge the sample into the start buffer.

e buffer by running it through a precolumn. Use high-quality reagents.

e column.

ise degassed buffers.

-quality reagents.



# 03 **Resins for** hydrophobic interaction chromatography





Historically, scientists have used several distinct types of material as a base matrix to covalently attach ligands to form a HIC resin. Chapter 1 describes how matrix characteristics determine chromatographic properties like efficiency, capacity, and recovery as well as chemical, and physical stability and flow properties.

Capto<sup>™</sup> resins are based on a rigid, high-flow agarose base matrix with an optimized pore structure that offers good pressure and flow. These resins are intended for use in process development and large-scale manufacturing, but also in research labs. Their high flow rates allow increased productivity and large-volume processing.

This chapter describes commercially available resins along with recommendations for use, purification examples, separation and cleaning protocols, and tips and hints for achieving excellent performance. Figure 3.1 gives a selection guide for the resins and prepacked columns currently available for HIC. This chapter guides you to faster separations and improved performance.

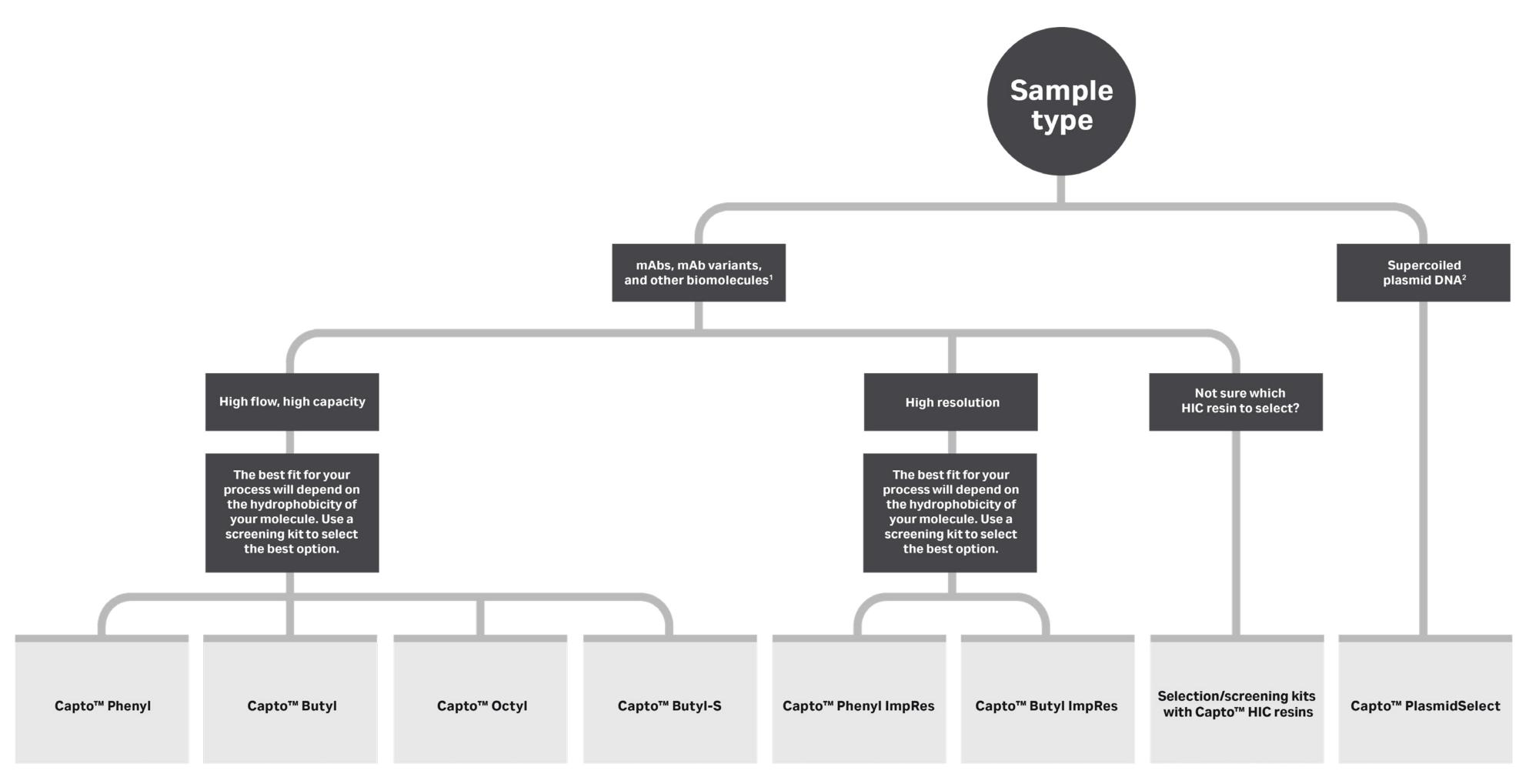
### **Capto™ resins: High-flow resins with high resolution**

Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins enable high-productivity purification steps, where the ligands are coupled to a chemically modified, highflow agarose matrix. The high-flow agarose matrix provides particle rigidity without compromising the pore size. This allows for fast mass transfer resulting in high dynamic binding capacities at high flow rates, making the resin suitable for processscale applications.

You can use Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl (high sub), Capto<sup>™</sup> Octyl, and Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl and Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl-S for capture, and intermediate purification of biomolecules. Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes and Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes are high-resolution resins designed for intermediate purification and polishing.

Capto<sup>™</sup> and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes offer improved pressure-flow properties compared to Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow, and Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance, respectively, due to the increased mechanical stability of the base matrix (Fig 3.2).

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography



<sup>1</sup> For example, oligonucleotides, peptides, other recombinant proteins, protein complexes.

<sup>2</sup> Thiophilic aromatic adsorption.

Fig 3.1. Selection guide for Capto™ HIC resins.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### **Resin characteristics**

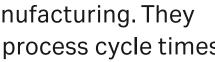
Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins are modern resins that meet the demands of large-scale biopharmaceutical manufacturing. They combine high capacity, narrow specification range, high flow rate, and low backpressure to reduce process cycle times and increase productivity.

Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes HIC chromatography resins extend the well-established Capto<sup>™</sup> platform to include high-resolution resins. The high-flow characteristics of Capto<sup>™</sup> resin are combined with smaller particle size, to deliver good resolution with excellent pressure, and flow properties. Scientists and process developers can run them at higher flow velocities with higher bed heights, increasing flexibility in process design.

| Resin                    | <b>Functional group</b> | pH stability  | Particle size, d <sub>50V</sub> (µm) <sup>‡</sup> |  |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|---|---|--|
| Capto™ Phenyl (high sub) | Phenyl                  | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP <sup>†</sup> : 2 to 14 | 75  |  |
| Capto™ Butyl             | Butyl                   | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP <sup>†</sup> : 2 to 14 | 75  |  |
| Capto™ Butyl-S           | Butyl-S                 | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP <sup>†</sup> : 2 to 14 | 75  |  |
| Capto™ Octyl             | Octyl                   | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP†: 2 to 14              | 75  |  |
| Capto™ Phenyl ImpRes     | Phenyl                  | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP†: 2 to 14              | 40  |  |
| Capto™ Butyl ImpRes      | Butyl                   | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP†: 2 to 14              | 40  |  |
| Capto™ PlasmidSelect     | 2-mercaptopyridine      | Operational*: 3 to 13<br>CIP†: 2 to 14              | 40  |  |

**Table 3.1.** Characteristics of Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins

\*pH range where resin can be operated without significant change in function. All ranges are estimates based on the experience and knowledge within Cytiva. <sup>†</sup>pH range where resin can be subjected to cleaning-in-place (CIP) or sanitization-in-place without significant change in function. <sup>‡</sup>Median particle size of the cumulative volume distribution.



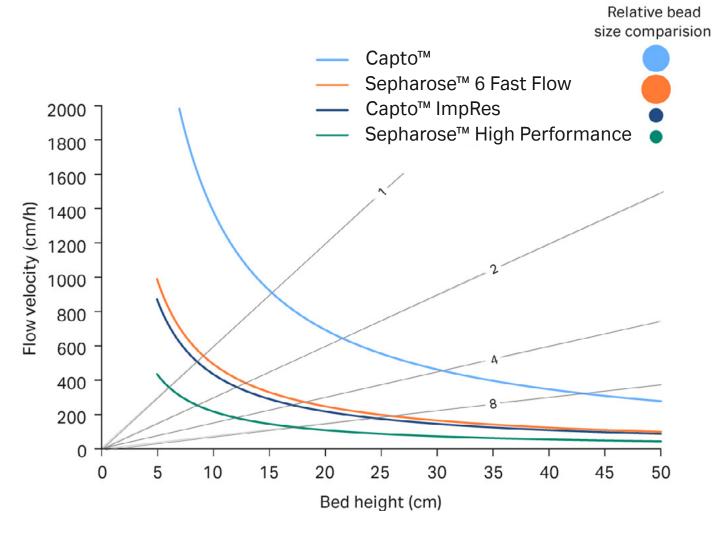
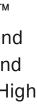


Fig 3.2. The window of operation (area below the curves) of Capto<sup>™</sup> vs Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow, and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes vs Sepharose™ High Performance. The data corresponds to a process diameter column at 20°C and viscosity equivalent to water. Gray contours show the residence time in the column in minutes. Capto™ and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes HIC resins are excellent modern alternatives to Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow, and Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance.





### **Purification options**

Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins are available prepacked in HiTrap<sup>™</sup>, and HiScreen<sup>™</sup> columns, and in chromatography resin lab packs. Table 3.2 shows different Capto™ resins for HIC. Some of the resins are also available in PreDictor<sup>™</sup> filter plates, PreDictor<sup>™</sup> RoboColumn<sup>™</sup>, and ReadyToProcess<sup>™</sup> columns.



Use prepacked HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns (1 mL or 5 mL) for resin selection, group separations, and small-scale purification.

Note: The binding capacity of a HIC resin depends on the properties of the target protein, and contaminants, the selectivity of the resin, and the binding conditions. You should determine the capacity empirically during resin screening and method development.

 $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ 

Use the PreDictor<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Screening Kit, which consists of 4 × 96well plates prefilled with six different Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins for use in highthroughput process development. Data generated using PreDictor™ plates correlates well with data from chromatography columns, making the plates an excellent tool for the initial screening of process conditions.

Use prepacked HiScreen<sup>™</sup> columns (4.7 mL, 10 cm bed height) for method development and optimization before scaling up.



 $\overline{}$ 

For column packing: You can use Capto<sup>™</sup> resins with most modern chromatography equipment from laboratory to production scale. Due to the higher rigidity of Capto<sup>™</sup> resins, packing procedures differ slightly compared to procedures for packing Sepharose<sup>™</sup> resins. For more details on packing laboratory-scale columns, check the instructions for the resin or column you are using.

### Product

HiTrap™ Ca HiTrap™ C HiTrap Cap HiScreen<sup>™</sup>

**HiScreen**<sup>T</sup>

**HiScreen**<sup>T</sup>

HiScreen<sup>™</sup>

**HiScreen**<sup>T</sup>

HiScreen<sup>™</sup>

<sup>1</sup>At 25°C using buffers with the same viscosity as water.

**Table 3.2.** Technical properties of Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins and prepacked columns

|                               | <b>Recommended</b><br>operating flow <sup>1</sup> | Maximum<br>operating flow <sup>1</sup> | Maximum operating<br>pressure (MPa/psi) 1<br>MPa = 10 bar |
|-------------------------------|---|--|---|
| Capto™ Butyl, 1 mL            | 1 mL/min  | 4 mL/min                               | 0.3/43  |
| Capto™ Butyl, 5 mL            | 5 mL/min  | 20 mL/min                              | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Phenyl (high sub), 1 mL | 1 mL/min  | 4 mL/min                               | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Phenyl (high sub), 5 mL | 5 mL/min  | 20 mL/min                              | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Octyl, 1 mL             | 1 mL/min  | 4 mL/min                               | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Octyl, 5 mL             | 5 mL/min  | 20 mL/min                              | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Phenyl ImpRes, 1 mL     | 1 mL/min  | 4 mL/min                               | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Phenyl ImpRes, 5 mL     | 5 mL/min  | 20 mL/min                              | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Butyl ImpRes, 1 mL      | 1 mL/min  | 4 mL/min                               | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ Butyl ImpRes, 5 mL      | 5 mL/min  | 20 mL/min                              | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ PlasmidSelect, 1 mL     | 1 mL/min  | 4 mL/min                               | 0.3/43  |
| apto™ PlasmidSelect, 5 mL     | 5 mL/min  | 20 mL/min                              | 0.3/43  |
| ™ Capto™ Butyl                | 2.7 mL/min  | 4.7 mL/min                             | 0.3/43  |
| ™ Capto™ Phenyl (high sub)    | 2.7 mL/min  | 4.7 mL/min                             | 0.3/43  |
| ™ Capto™ Octyl                | 2.7 mL/min  | 4.7 mL/min                             | 0.3/43  |
| ™ Capto™ Butyl ImpRes         | 1.2 mL/min  | 1.7 mL/min                             | 0.3/43  |
| ™ Capto™ Phenyl ImpRes        | 1.2 mL/min  | 1.7 mL/min                             | 0.3/43  |
| ™ Capto™ PlasmidSelect        | 1.2 mL/min  | 2.3 mL/min                             | 0.3/43  |
|                               |   |  |   |



|                                  | Max. o   |            | x. operating pressure | Max. operating pressure | perating pressure    | Inner diameter        | <b>Bed volume</b>  | <b>Bed height</b>  |                        | Max. o        | perating pr          | ressure            | Inner diameter | <b>Bed volume</b> | Bed hei |
|----------------------------------|----------|------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------|
| Column                           |          |            | Column                | bar                     | psi                  | MPa                   | (mm)               | (mL)               | (mm)*                  |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 5/20                    | 100      | 1450       | 10                    | 5                       | 0.0 to 0.5           | 0 to 26               | XK 16/40           | 5                  | 72.5                   | 0.5           | 16                   | 16 to70            | 80 to 3        |                   |         |
| Tricorn ™ 5/50                   | 100      | 1450       | 10                    | 5                       | 0.2 to 1.1           | 8 to 56               | XK 26/20           | 5                  | 72.5                   | 0.5           | 26                   | 0 to 66            | 0 to 12        |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 5/100                   | 100      | 1450       | 10                    | 5                       | 1.2 to 2.1           | 58 to 106             | XK 26/40           | 5                  | 72.5                   | 0.5           | 26                   | 45 to 186          | 85 to 38       |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 5/150                   | 100      | 1450       | 10                    | 5                       | 2.1 to 3.1           | 108 to 156            | XK 50/20           | 3                  | 43.5                   | 0.3           | 50                   | 0 to 274           | 0 to 14        |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 5/200                   | 100      | 1450       | 10                    | 5                       | 3.1 to 4.1           | 158 to 206            | XK 50/30           | 3                  | 43.5                   | 0.3           | 50                   | 0 to 559           | 0 to 280       |                   |         |
| Tricorn 10/20                    | 50       | 725        | 5                     | 10                      | 0.0 to 2.1           | 0 to 26               | *The minimum value | e corresponds to a | backing perfo          | rmed with the | e adapters.          |                    |                |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 10/50                   | 50       | 725        | 5                     | 10                      | 0.0 to 4.4           | 0 to 56               | Empty columns      | for packing Ca     | pto <sup>™</sup> chroi | matograph     | ny resins are shown  | in Table 3.3. AxiC | hrom™, BP0     |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 10/100                  | 50       | 725        | 5                     | 10                      | 3.6 to 8.4           | 46 to 106             | and Chromaflow     | v™ columns ca      | n be used f            | or packing    | J Capto™ resins at p | ilot and producti  | on scale.      |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 10/150                  | 50       | 725        | 5                     | 10                      | 7.6 to 12.3          | 96 to 156             |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 10/200                  | 50       | 725        | 5                     | 10                      | 11.5 to 16.2         | 146 to 206            |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| Tricorn™ 10/300                  | 50       | 725        | 5                     | 10                      | 19.4 to 24.1         | 246 to 306            |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| HiScale™ 10/40                   | 20       | 290        | 2                     | 10                      | 8 to 31              | 100 to 400            |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| HiScale™ 16/20                   | 20       | 290        | 2                     | 16                      | 0 to 40              | 0 to 200              |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
|                                  |          |            |                       |                         |                      |                       |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| HiScale™ 16/40                   | 20       | 290        | 2                     | 16                      | 16 to 80             | 80 to 400             |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| HiScale™ 16/40<br>HiScale™ 26/20 | 20<br>20 | 290<br>290 | 2                     | 16<br>26                | 16 to 80<br>0 to 106 | 80 to 400<br>0 to 200 |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
|                                  |          |            |                       |                         |                      |                       |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |
| HiScale™ 26/20                   | 20       | 290        | 2                     | 26                      | 0 to 106             | 0 to 200              |                    |                    |                        |               |                      |                    |                |                   |         |

Table 3.3. List of suitable empty columns at laboratory scale for packing of Capto™ resins





## **Purification examples**

### Plasmid purification using Capto<sup>™</sup> PlasmidSelect

Purified plasmid DNA is required in increasing quantities to meet emerging requirements for gene therapy and DNA vaccine applications.

Capto<sup>™</sup> PlasmidSelect is a thiophilic aromatic adsorption chromatography resin with a selectivity that allows supercoiled covalently closed circular forms of plasmid DNA to be separated from open circular forms. The resin is designed for the purification of supercoiled DNA to high quality for gene therapy and DNA vaccine applications. The resin is based on a rigid base matrix, delivering excellent pressure-flow properties to plasmid production. It forms the basis of a generic process for purifying supercoiled covalently closed circular plasmid DNA suitable for bulk as well as for clinical-grade applications.

The resin can also be used to rapidly analyze the quantity and quality of plasmid DNA in complex solutions.

Figure 3.3 shows the purification of plasmid DNA from Plasmid-containing feedstream using Capto™ PlasmidSelect.

| Column:        | HiScreen™ PlasmidSelect                                   |
|----------------|---|
| Sample:        | Plasmid-containing feedstream                             |
| Sample load:   | 3 mg plasmid/mL resin                                     |
| Equilibration: | 5 CV of 100 mM of Tris, 2 M of ammonium sulfate, 10 mM    |
|                | EDTA, pH 7.5 at 100 cm/h                                  |
| Elution:       | 10 CV of 100 mM Tris, 1.7 M ammonium sulfate, 10 mM EDTA, |
|                | pH 7.5 + 0.3 M NaCl at 80 cm/h                            |
| Wash:          | 5 CV of 100 mM Tris, 2 M ammonium                         |
|                | sulfate, 10 mM EDTA, pH 7.5 at 100 cm/h                   |
| System:        | ÄKTA avant™ 150   |
| CIP:           | 3 CV of 100 mM Tris, 10 mM EDTA at 100 cm/h               |
| Detection:     | 254 nm  |

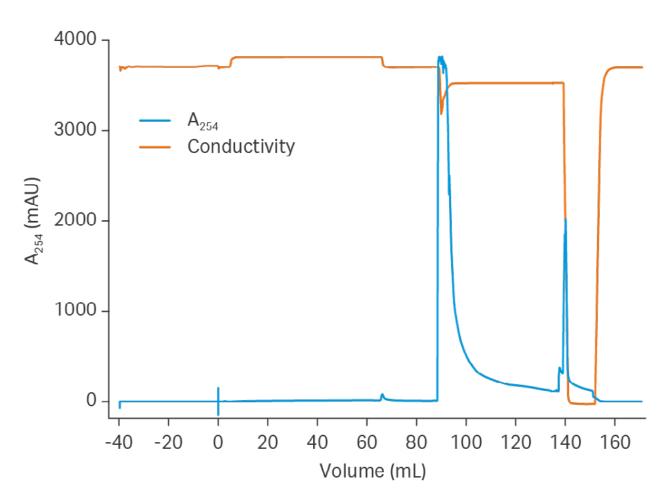


Fig 3.3. The purification of plasmid DNA using Capto<sup>™</sup> PlasmidSelect.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Polishing of mAb

We compared aggregate removal results using Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes, and its corresponding predecessor Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin (Fig 3.4). Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes achieved a similar decrease in aggregate content with the potential to use higher bed heights and increased flow rates (Fig 3.5).

|                  | Gradient elution   | Step elution   |
|------------------|--|--|
| Flow rate        | 0.25 mL/min (75 cm/h)  | 0.65 mL/min (200 cm/h)   |
| Bed height (cm)  | 5  | 20   |
| Buffers          | A: 25 mM citrate with 1 M ammonium sulfate, pH 5.0<br>B: ultrapure deionized water   | A: 25 mM citrate, 850 mM<br>B: 25 mM citrate, pH 5.0   |
| UNICORN™ method  | Equilibrium, 85% A and 15% B, 2 CV<br>Sample load, 66% of Q <sub>b10</sub> <sup>-1</sup><br>Column wash, 15% B, 5 CV<br>Gradient elution, 15% B to 100% B, 10 CV<br>Strip, 100% B, 5 CV<br>Re-equilibration, 15% B, 5 CV | Equilibrium with the buffer<br>Sample load, 65% of Q <sub>b10</sub> <sup>1</sup><br>Column wash, 0% B, 2 CV<br>Step elution, 50% B, 5 CV<br>Strip, 100% B, 5 CV<br>Re-equilibration, A buffer, |
| CIP <sup>2</sup> | 0.1 M NaOH, 0.5 mL/min, 1 CV   |  |

**Table 3.4.** Summary of aggregate removal methods

<sup>1</sup>Q<sub>b10</sub> = Dynamic binding capacity at 10% breakthrough by frontal analysis (displacement chromatography)

<sup>2</sup>Cleaning- or sanitization-in-place without significant change in function.

M ammonium sulfate, pH 5.0

ffer, 0% B, 2 CV

er, 3 CV



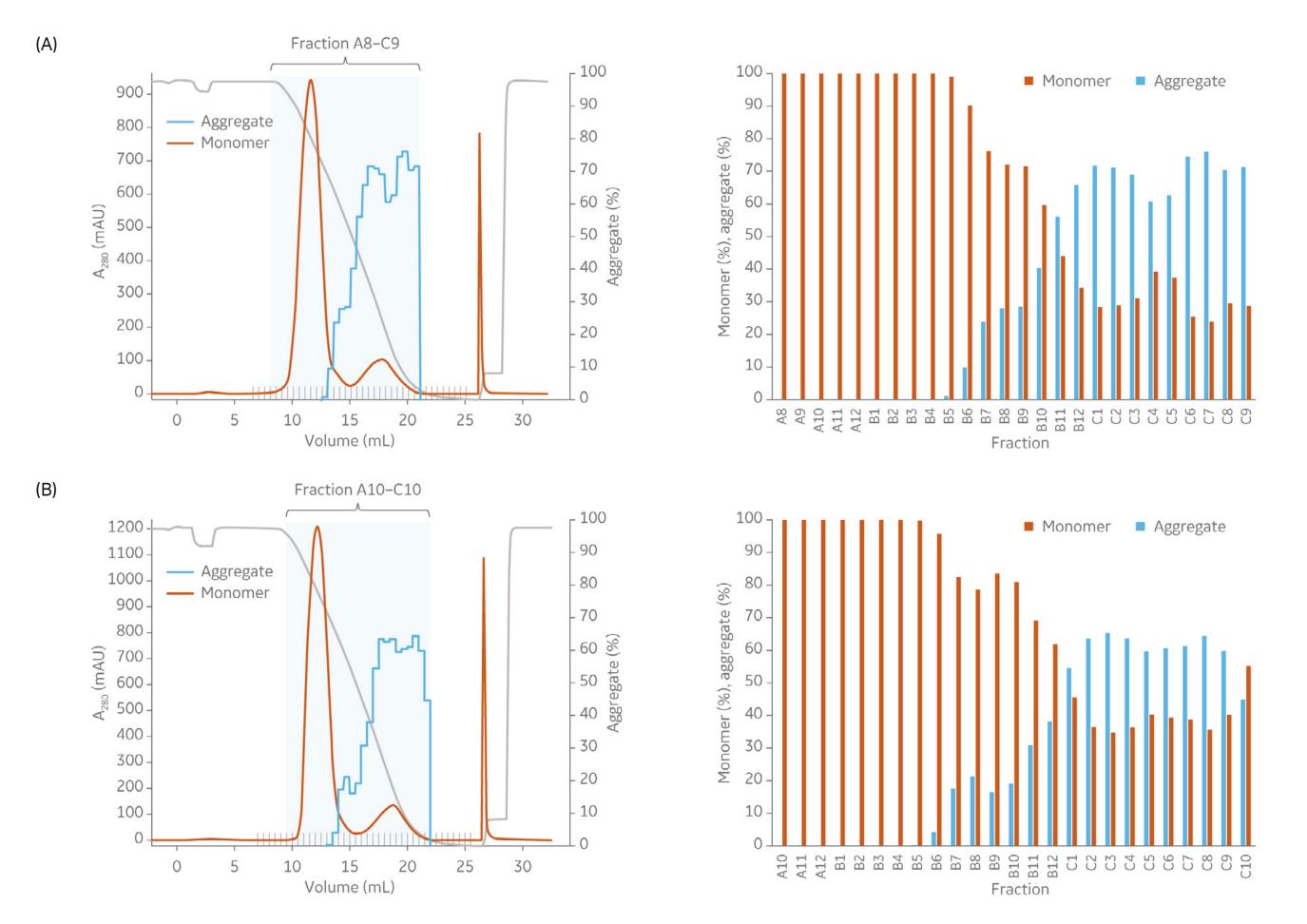


Fig 3.4. At a load of 66% of Q<sub>b10</sub> in 1 mL columns (10 cm bed height) with a flow velocity of 75 cm/h, (A) Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes, (B) Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resins both effectively decrease the aggregate content and show similar elution profiles.

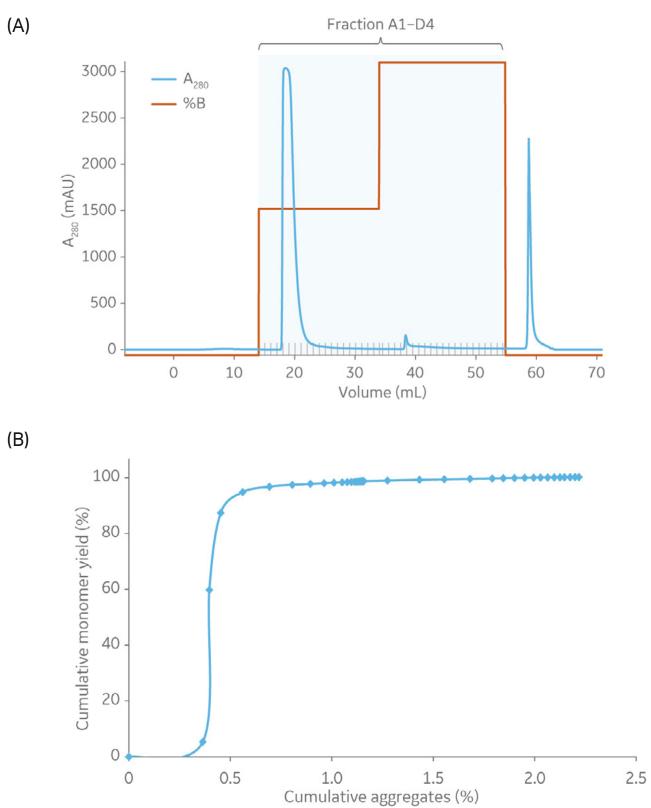


Fig 3.5. (A) Results from Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl Impres with a load of 65% of Q<sub>b10</sub> for mAb and aggregate mixture show favorable monomer yield with increased flow velocity (200 cm/h), and bed height (20 cm). From left to right, peaks represent the monomer, aggregate, and CIP. The marked fractions were analyzed for aggregates. (B) Cumulative monomer yield versus cumulative aggregate content using Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes and a mAb sample containing 10.3% aggregate at 20 cm bed height, and a flow velocity of 200 cm/h. The aggregate content is below 1% at 98% monomer yield after this HIC purification step.

Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes and Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resins showed similar capabilities in aggregate removal (Fig 3.4) when using gradient elution. Using Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes instead of Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance with step elution improves productivity as higher bed heights and flow rates can be used while maintaining monomer purity and favorable yield (Fig 3.5).

Hydrophob ography

### **Chemical stability**

For daily use, Capto<sup>™</sup> resins are stable in all common, aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), 70% ethanol, 1 M acetic acid, and with additives like nonionic detergents.

### Storage

3

کی

For column storage, wash with 5 CV of distilled water followed by 5 CV of 20% ethanol. Store at 4°C to 30°C. Do not freeze. Seal the column well to keep it from drying out.

### **SOURCE™** resins

Use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resin for polishing steps if you cannot find the right selectivity in resins with larger particle sizes.

Run SOURCE™ columns on instruments like ÄKTA™ systems, and HPLC. See Appendix 3 for guidance on selecting purification equipment

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins are based on a hydrophilic matrix made from monodispersed, rigid, polystyrendivin and substituted with hydrophobic ligands; isopropyl or phenyl (Fig 3.6). The resins demonstrate extre physical stability. The small particle sizes allow fast binding, and dissociation to facilitate high resolu uniformity and stability of the particles ensure high flow rates at low backpressure.

The high flow rates that you can use with SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins are more likely to be limited by the equipme physical properties of the resin.

You can easily scale up separation methods from prepacked RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> columns to large-scale col columns.

### Ligand

Isopropyl (ISO)

hydrophobicity

Increasing ligand

Fig 3.6. Ligands couple to monodispersed SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resin particles through uncharged, chemically stable O-ether linkages.

### **Resin characteristics**

The resin's composition is rigid, and monodisperse, having polystyrene, and divinylbenzene particles (15 µm) with an optimized pore size distribution. The base matrix couples to one of two hydrophobic ligands; isopropyl or phenyl.

**Table 3.5.** Characteristics of SOURCE<sup>™</sup> HIC resins

| nyl benzenene,<br>reme chemical and | Products                                       | Matrix   | pH stability   | Particle size (d <sub>50\</sub> |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|---------------------------------|
| lution while the                    | SOURCE™ 15ISO,<br>SOURCE™ 15PHE                | Polystyrene/divinyl particles                                | Operational <sup>*</sup> : 2 to 12<br>CIP <sup>+</sup> : 1 to 14 | 15 µm                           |
| nent rather than the                |  | n can be operated without sig<br>nd knowledge within Cytiva. | nificant change in function. All                                 | ranges are estimates b          |
| olumns like FineLINE™               | <sup>†</sup> pH range where resir<br>function. | n can be subjected to cleaning                               | g- or sanitization-in-place witho                                | out significant change ir       |
|                                     | <sup>‡</sup> Mean particle diame               | ter, monodisperse size distrib                               | ution.   |                                 |



### based

in

tography

### **Purification options**



Fig 3.7. HIC resins based on a SOURCE<sup>™</sup> matrix are available in prepacked columns and as resin packs.

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins are available in resin packs and prepacked in RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> columns (Fig 3.7 and Table 3.6). An example of screening purification of a mouse mAb with SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins for HIC is shown in Figure 3.8.

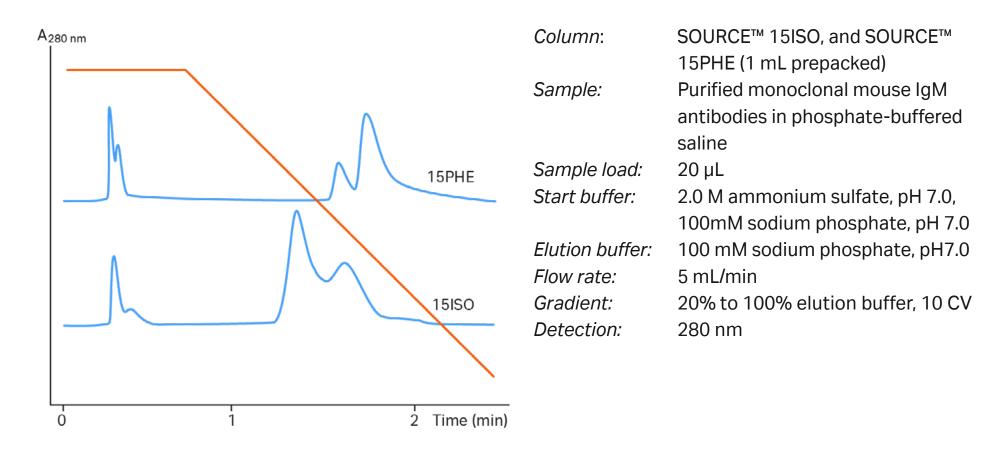
Table 3.6. SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins and prepacked columns

| Product                                    | Ligand*   | Recommended<br>operating flow <sup>†</sup> | Maximum operating flow rate <sup>†</sup> | Maximum<br>(MPa/psi) |
|--|-----------|--|--|----------------------|
| RESOURCE™ PHE, 1 mL column                 | phenyl    | 0.8 to 4.8 mL/min                          | 10 mL/min                                | 1.5/220              |
| SOURCE™ 15PHE 4.6/100<br>PE, 1.7 mL column | phenyl    | 0.5 to 2.5 mL/min                          | 5 mL/min                                 | 4/580                |
| SOURCE™ 15PHE resin                        | phenyl    | 150 to 900 cm/h                            | 1800 cm/h                                | 0.5/72               |
| RESOURCE™ ISO, 1 mL column                 | isopropyl | 0.8 to 4.8 mL/min                          | 10 mL/min                                | 1.5/220              |
| SOURCE™ 15ISO resin                        | isopropyl | 150 to 900 cm/h                            | 1800 cm/h                                | 0.5/72               |

\*The nature of the SOURCE<sup>™</sup> matrix makes it impossible to define ligand density in the way that is used to compare Sepharose<sup>™</sup> resin-based products.

<sup>†</sup>See Appendix 4 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rates (L/min), and *vice versa*. Note that the final working flow will depend also on factors such as column size, and bed height, sample characteristics and loading conditions, the equipment you are using, and the backpressure that the equipment can withstand.

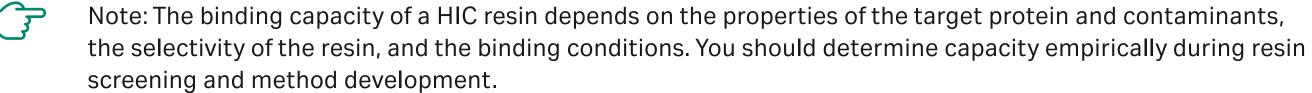
<sup>‡</sup>Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the resin begins to compress.



**Fig 3.8.** Screening of HIC resins for an antibody purification.

m operating pressure<sup>‡</sup> i) 1 MPa = 10 bar







Use prepacked RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> columns for fast resin selection, method scouting, group separations, or sample concentration.

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

Use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15PHE 4.6/100 PE columns to improve resolution by increasing column length. Further optimization might be required. Use optimized conditions as the first step toward scaling up.

Packing volumes for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins in Tricorn<sup>™</sup> chromatography columns are shown in Table 3.7.

| Empty glass column<br>i.d./length (mm) | Volume (mL)                   | Bed height (cm) |
|--|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Tricorn™ 5/150                         | up to 3                       | up to 15        |
| Tricorn™ 5/200                         | up to 4                       | up to 20        |
| Tricorn™ 10/100                        | up to 8                       | up to 10        |
| Tricorn™ 10/150                        | orn™ 10/150 up to 12 up to 15 |                 |
| Tricorn™ 10/200                        | up to 16                      | up to 20        |

Table 3.7. Packing volumes and bed heights for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins

Select a production column like the FineLINE<sup>™</sup> column for larger volumes.

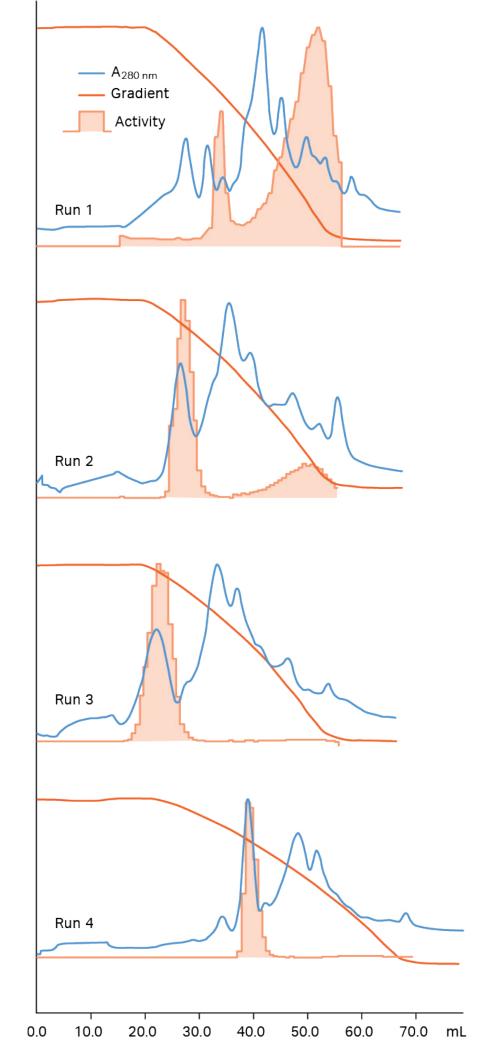
### **Purification examples**

### Method optimization

Figure 3.9 shows examples of runs made while optimizing the intermediate purification step for a recombinant protein, tyrosine phosphatase. We partially purified the protein in an initial capture step, using ion exchange chromatography on Q Sepharose<sup>™</sup> XL. We isolated the active fraction, applied it to a SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15PHE 4.6/100 PE column for intermediate purification by HIC. Results show that increasing the ammonium sulfate concentration used during sample application and increasing the gradient volume used for elution had the most significant impact on resolution.

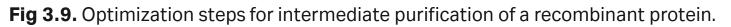
Note that, after the first run, we added glycerol to reduce the strong binding of tyrosine phosphatase, and to better facilitate elution (see additives used during HIC separations in Table 2.2 in Chapter 2).

nAU



### Purification protocol: CIPP Starting material: Diluted E. coli supernatant Capture: Q Sepharose<sup>™</sup> XL resin Intermediate purification: SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15PHE column Polishing: Superdex<sup>™</sup> 75 column

| Column:                 | SOURCE™ 15PHE 4.6/100 PE  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Sample:                 | Recombinant protein tyrosine  |
|                         | phosphatase, partially purifie                                      |
|                         | HiTrap™ Q XL 5 mL   |
| Sample load:            | 10 mL   |
| Start buffer (run 1):   | 25 mM Tris, 1 mM EDTA ,   |
|                         | 2 mM DTT, pH 7.5  |
| Elution buffer (run 1): | 1.5 M (NH <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 25 mM Tris, |
|                         | 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM DTT, pH 7.  |
| Start buffer (run 2):   | 1.5 M (NH $_{a}$ ) $_{2}$ SO $_{4}$ , 50 mM Tris,                   |
|                         | 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM DTT, pH 7.  |
| Elution buffer (run 2): | 50 mM Tris, 1 mM EDTA, 2 ml   |
|                         | DTT, 10% glycerol, pH 7.5   |
| Start buffer (run 3):   | 1.5 M (NH <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 20 mM MES,  |
|                         | 1 mM EDTA, 2 mM DTT, pH 6.  |
| Elution buffer (run 3): | 20 mM MES, 1 mM EDTA , 2 n  |
|                         | DTT, 10% glycerol, pH 6.5   |
| Start buffer (run 4):   | 2 M (NH <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 20 mM MES,    |
|                         | 1 mM EDTA , 2 mM DTT, pH 6  |
| Elution buffer (run 4): | 20 mM MES, 1 mM EDTA , 2 n  |
|                         | DTT, 10% glycerol, pH 6.5   |
| Flow rate:              | a) 1.5 mL/min (run 1)   |
|                         | b) 1.0 mL/min (runs 2, 3, 4)  |
| Gradient:               | 0% to 100% elution buffer in  |
|                         | 20 CV (runs 1,2,3)  |
|                         | 0% to100% elution buffer in   |
|                         | 27 CV (run 4)   |
| Detection:              | 280 nm  |
| Activity measurement:   | p-nitrophenyl phosphate (pN   |
|                         | activity assay at 405 nm.   |
|                         |   |















### Scaling up

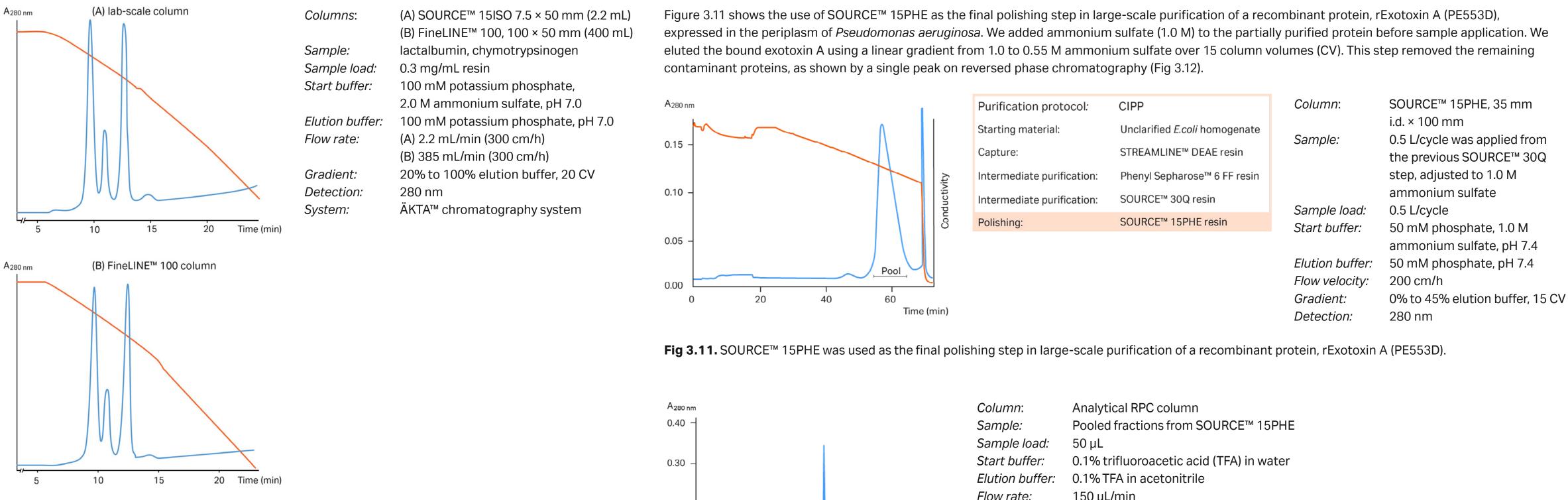


Fig 3.10. Reproducible results when scaling up on SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15ISO. Separation of a model protein mixture shows a 180-fold scale-up from a laboratory-scale column (A) to a FineLINE<sup>™</sup> 100 production-scale column (B).

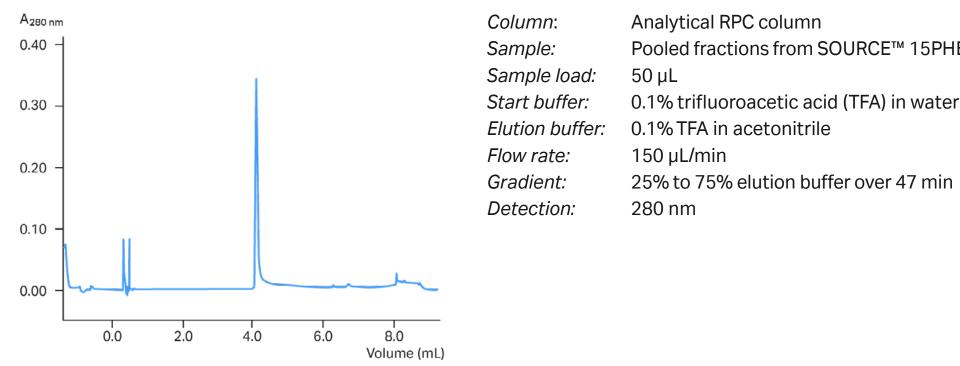
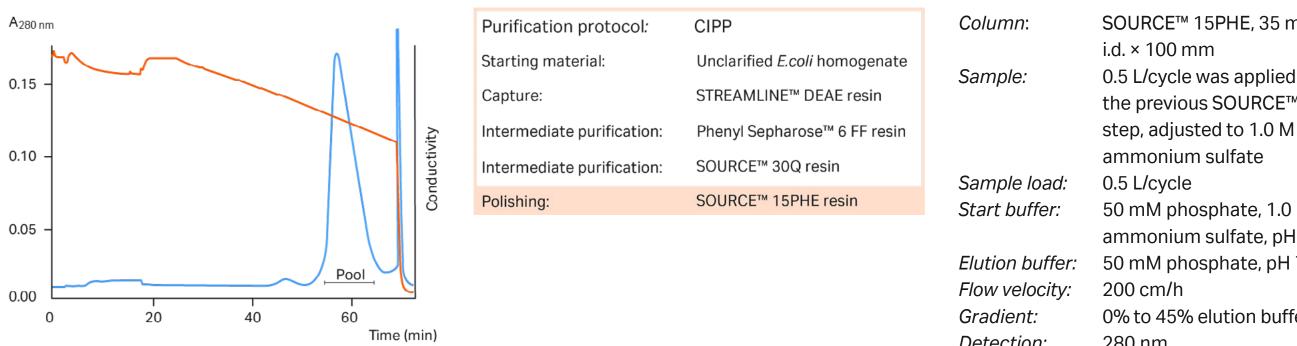


Fig 3.12. Chromatographic analysis demonstrates purity after polishing step on SOURCE™ 15PHE.

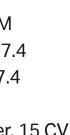
### Polishing













### **Performing a separation**

See Chapter 2 for guidelines on selecting buffer, salt concentration, and pH, and optimizing your method. You can use the instructions here as the basis for optimizing your separation.



To optimize separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance, it is essential to prepare your sample and buffer correctly. Your samples must dissolve fully and be free from any particles or material that can interfere with separation. See Chapter 2, and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.



Filter buffers, and samples after adding all salts and additives. Use high-quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions using 0.22 µm filters. To avoid forming air bubbles in a packed column, and ensure reproducible results, keep the column and buffers at the same temperature when you are preparing for a run.



لى ا

To avoid problems with precipitation, check the salt stability window of the sample components. Avoid working at concentrations near the stability limit of the target protein. For samples with unknown hydrophobic properties, try this:

Start buffer: 1.5 M ammonium sulfate, 50 mM phosphate buffer, pH 7.0 Elution buffer: 50 mM phosphate buffer, pH 7.0

Note: You might need to reduce flow rates due to the viscosity of your chosen start buffer, sample characteristics, loading requirements, and the equipment you are using.

### First-time use or first use after long-term storage

- 1. Remove any ethanol. To do this, wash with 5 CV of distilled water or elution buffer.
  - Flow: 2 mL/min, SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15PHE 4.6/100 PE 4 mL/min, RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 1 mL 200 cm/h for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> packed in larger columns
- 2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer using the same flow rate as the first step.
- 3. Perform a blank elution (i.e., perform a run without loading any sample) to check the conductivity profile.

### Separation by gradient elution

2 mL/min, SOURCE 15PHE 4.6/100 PE Flow: 4 mL/min, RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 1 mL 200 cm/h for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> packed in larger columns

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

- 1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline, and conductivity are stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if needed). Filter, and apply it to the column.
- 3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline, and conductivity are stable so that all unbound material has washed through the column.
- 4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV, increasing the proportion of elution buffer until the salt concentration reaches a minimum (i.e., salt-free buffer).
- 5. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.
- 6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until conductivity reaches the required value.





### Separation by step elution

2 mL/min, SOURCE 15PHE 4.6/100 PE Flow: 4 mL/min, RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 1 mL 200 cm/h for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> packed in larger columns

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

- 1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity is stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if needed). Filter, and apply it to the column.
- 3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline, and conductivity are stable so that all unbound material has washed through the column.
- 4. Elute with 5 CV of elution buffer, and salt at your chosen concentration.
- 5. Repeat step 4 at lower salt concentrations until you have eluted the target protein(s).
- 6. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.
- 7. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until conductivity reaches your required value.





## Cleaning



You can save time by using higher flow rates during the salt-free wash, and re-equilibration steps, but do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the resin.

Check your column performance regularly by determining column efficiency, and peak symmetry. See Appendix 2 for more details.

Never leave columns or equipment in high-salt solutions.

Correctly preparing your samples, and buffers and applying a salt-free buffer at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing backpressure, or complete blockage are all signs that you need to clean the resin using more stringent procedures.

Whenever possible, reverse the direction of flow during cleaning so that contaminants do not pass through the entire column length. Due to the column design, we do not recommend that you reverse the direction of flow for RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> columns. The number of CV and time required for each cleaning step can vary according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Take care when changing the filter, as it can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.





Hydroph ography

To remove common contaminants like precipitated proteins, use this procedure:

- Flow: 0.2 mL/min, SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15PHE 4.6/100 PE 1 mL/min, RESOURCE™ 1 mL 40 cm/h, with a contact time of 1 to 2 h, for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> packed in larger columns. Note that you might need to reduce flow rates due to the condition of the column or the viscosity of the sample, buffers, or storage solutions.
- 1. Wash with at least 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
- 2. Wash with at least 3 CV of water, or until eluent pH is neutral.
- 3a. To start a new separation, re-equilibrate with at least 3 CV of start buffer or until you have achieved the correct eluent pH.
- 3b. For storage, wash with at least 5 CV of storage solution. Let the UV baseline stabilize before storing the column.

To remove lipids, lipoproteins, and very hydrophobic proteins, see Appendix 1.

### **Chemical stability**

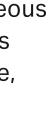
For daily use, HIC resins based on SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins are stable in all common aqueous buffers, 1 M HCI, 2 M NaOH, 20% ethanol, 100% isopropanol, denaturing agents (6 M guanidine hydrochloride), 1 M acetic acid, 30% isopropanol, 30% acetonitrile, and up to 2% SDS.

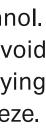
## Storage

For column storage, wash with 5 CV of distilled water followed by 5 CV of 20% ethanol. Degas the ethanol and water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid over pressuring the column. Make sure you seal the column well to keep it from drying out. Store your columns, and unused resins at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.



To avoid forming air bubbles, make sure that your columns, buffers, and equipment are at the same temperature before using them.







## **Sepharose™ High Performance resin**

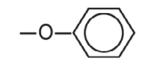
Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin is a legacy base matrix, which is used in many applications. For developing new processes or protein purification methods, we currently recommend using one of our more recent resins based on the Capto™ ImpRes base matrix (see Table 3.1).

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin is based on a matrix of particles (with a mean size of 34 µm) made from 6% agarose and highly cross-linked for chemical and physical stability. The small particle size supports fast binding and dissociation even at high sample loads and flow rates. Combined with the right selectivity, you can achieve high-resolution separations. The particle size and bed volumes remain stable despite changes in salt concentration, keeping separations fast at high flow rates. Ligands are coupled through a chemically stable O-ether linkage (Fig 3.13). The different selectivity characteristics of Sepharose<sup>M</sup> based resins are shown in Figure 3.14.



You can use Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance for group separations, sample concentration, or capture steps. However, you should limit these separations to reasonably clean samples to avoid the risk of blocking the column filter — 34 µm particles require finer column filters.

Phenyl



Butyl

Fig 3.13. Ligands are a couple to Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance matrix with uncharged, chemically stable O-ether linkages.

### **Resin characteristics**

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance is based on highly cross-linked, 6% agarose formed into spherical particles (with a mean size of 34 µm) and substituted with s ligands through uncharged, chemically stable O-ether linkages (Table 3.8). Table 3.9 shows the currently available products based on Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin.

**Table 3.8.** Characteristics of Phenyl and Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resins

### Product

Phenyl Se High Perf

Butyl Sep High Perf

<sup>‡</sup>Median particle size of the cumulative volume distribution.

| t                     | Matrix                                       | pH stability  | Particle size (d <sub>50v</sub> ) <sup>‡</sup> |
|-----------------------|--|---|--|
| epharose™<br>formance | 6% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 12<br>CIP <sup>†</sup> : 3 to 13 | 34 µm  |
| pharose™<br>formance  | 6% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 12<br>CIP <sup>†</sup> : 2 to 14 | 34 µm  |

\*pH range where resin can be operated without significant change in function.

<sup>†</sup>pH range where resin can be subjected to cleaning- or sanitization-in-place without significant change in function.





### **Purification options**

**Table 3.9.** HIC products based on Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resins

| Product                            | Recommended<br>working flow rate<br>(mL/min) * | Maximum<br>operating flow<br>rate (mL/min) | Maximum operatin<br>pressure † (MPa/ps<br>1 MPa=10 bar |
|------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| HiTrap™ Phenyl HP, 1 mL            | up to 1 mL/min                                 | 4 mL/min                                   | 0.3/43   |
| HiTrap™ Phenyl HP, 5 mL            | up to 5 mL/min                                 | 20 mL/min                                  | 0.3/43   |
| HiPrep™ Phenyl HP 16/10, 20 mL     | up to 5 mL/min                                 | 5 mL/min                                   | 0.3/43   |
| Phenyl Sepharose™ High Performance | 30 to 150 cm/h                                 | 150 cm/h                                   | 0.5/72   |
| HiTrap™ Butyl HP, 1 mL             | up to 1 mL/min                                 | 4 mL/min                                   | 0.3/43   |
| HiTrap™ Butyl HP, 5 mL             | up to 5 mL/min                                 | 20 mL/min                                  | 0.3/43   |
| Butyl Sepharose™ High Performance  | 30 to 150 cm/h                                 | 150 cm/h                                   | 0.5/72   |

\*Recommendations are for separations at room temperature in aqueous buffers. See Appendix 4 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rates (mL/min) and *vice versa*. Note that the final working flow also depends on factors like column size and bed height, sample characteristics, and loading conditions, the equipment you are using, and the backpressure your equipment can withstand.

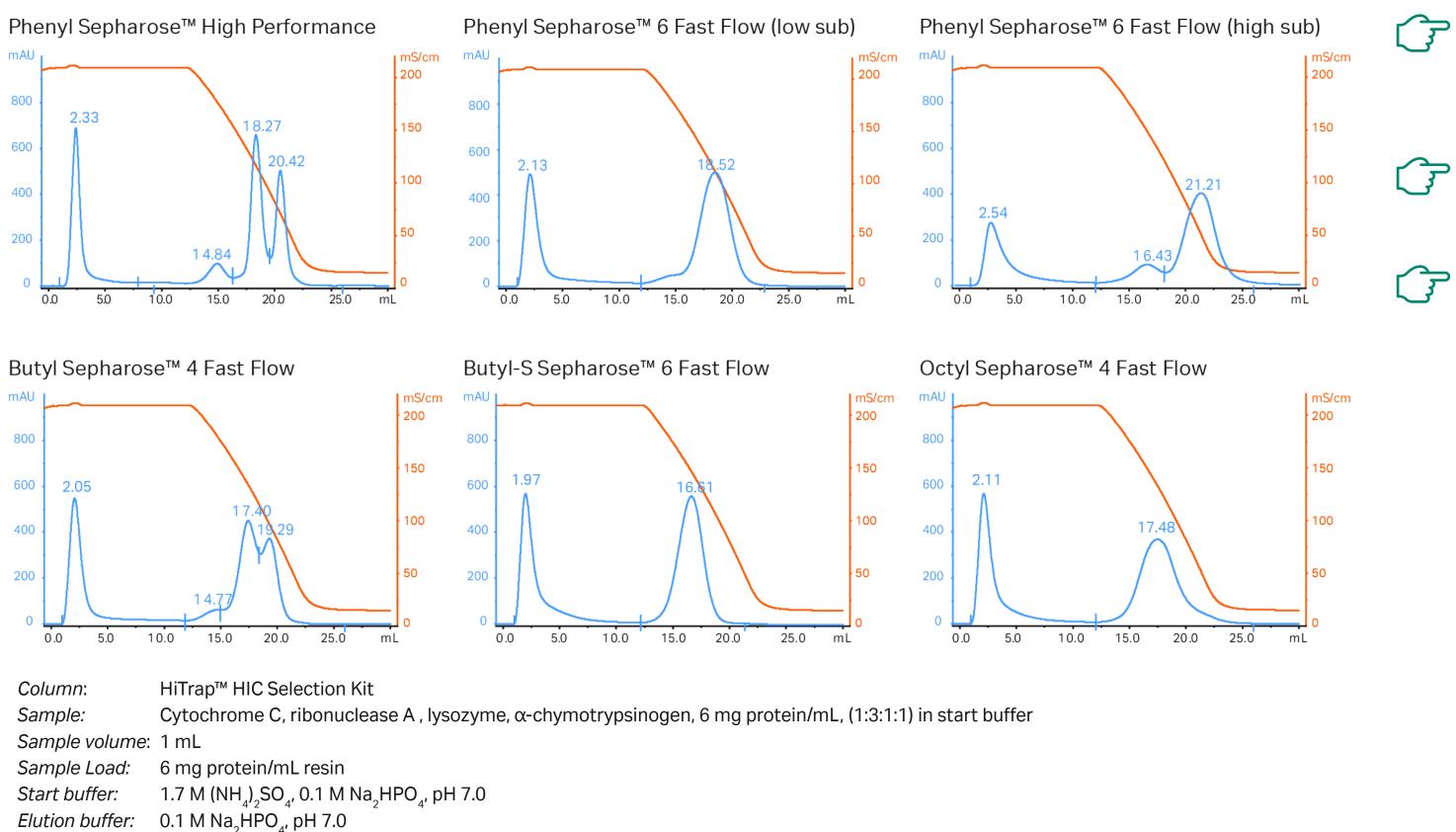
<sup>†</sup>Maximum operating pressure refers to the pressure above which the resin begins to compress.

The binding capacity of a HIC resin depends highly on the properties of the target protein, and contaminants, the selectivity of the resin, and the binding conditions. You need to determine capacity empirically during resin screening and method development.

Comparison of the different selectivity characteristics of various HIC resins are shown in Figure 3.14. Select the resin that gives the optimal selectivity, resolution, and loading capacity at the lowest salt concentration.

ting psi)





1.0 mL/min, (150 cm/h) Flow rate:

0% to 100% elution buffer in 10 CV Gradient:

Fig 3.14. Comparison of the different selectivity characteristics of Sepharose<sup>™</sup> based resins.

Use prepacked HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns (1 mL or 5 mL) for method scouting, group separations, small-scale purification, sample concentration, or cleanup. When you need increased capacity, use prepacked columns HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 16/10 Phenyl HP (20 mL).

Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin and Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes usually exhibit similar hydrophobic properties. Capto™ Phenyl ImpRes might give a similar resolution at higher flow rates.

The butyl ligand in Butyl Sepharose™ High Performance resin offers an alternative selectivity to Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin.





### **Purification examples**

### **Resin screening: Developing a monoclonal antibody purification**

Albumin and transferrin are the most common contaminants in monoclonal antibody preparations. However, since most monoclonal antibodies are more hydrophobic than these contaminants, you can use HIC to bind the antibody as the contaminants wash through the column.

Figure 3.15 shows an example of screening using columns from the HiTrap<sup>™</sup> HIC Selection Kit to select a HIC resin that could offer the best selectivity and resolution for purifying monoclonal IgG. Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin produced a well-resolved peak containing IgG. This peak is not necessarily the pure IgG, but it can represent a series of components with similar hydrophobicity to the IgG.

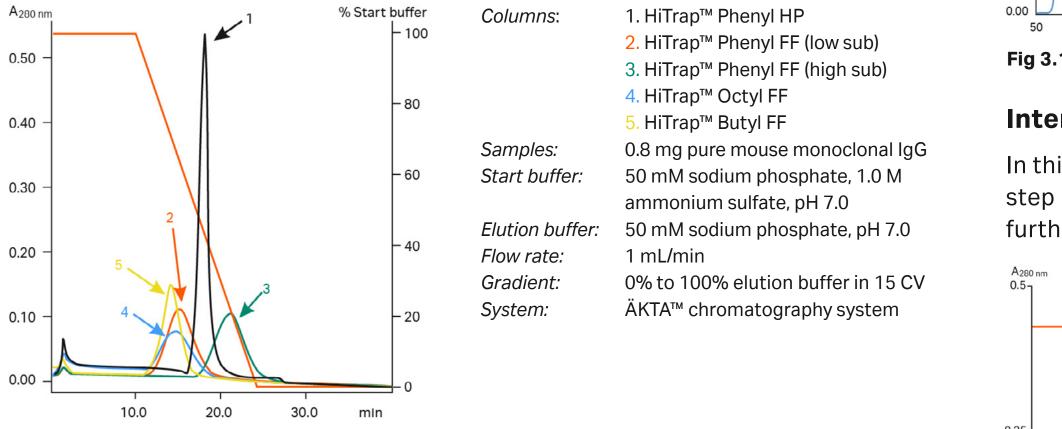
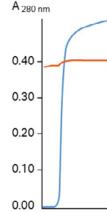


Fig 3.15. Resin screening for monoclonal antibody purification.

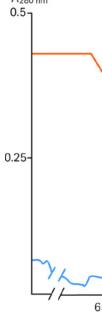
### **Capture: Monoclonal antibody purification**

Figure 3.16 shows an example of high selectivity used in a capture step. In this purification, we aimed to produce a monoclonal antibody with enough purity for in vitro diagnostic use. The mouse IgG, anti-IgE, produced in a hybridoma cell culture, bound very strongly to Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin, and most fetal calf serum proteins passed through the column. The capture step yielded > 95% purity, removing the need for an intermediate step. By concentrating the sample into a small volume, it could transfer directly to a polishing step.



### Intermediate purification: Recombinant HIV reverse transcriptase

In this example, an *E. coli* lysate was subjected to ammonium sulfate precipitation (see Appendix 1) followed by a capture step using ion exchange chromatography (Fig 3.17). After adding ammonium sulfate, we used HIC to concentrate, and further purify the sample using a gradient elution prior to a final polishing step using another ion exchange resin.



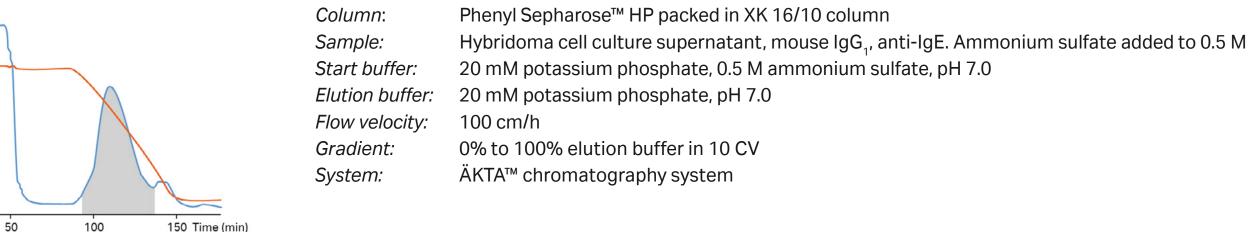


Fig 3.16. Concentration and purification of a monoclonal antibody from hybridoma cell culture.

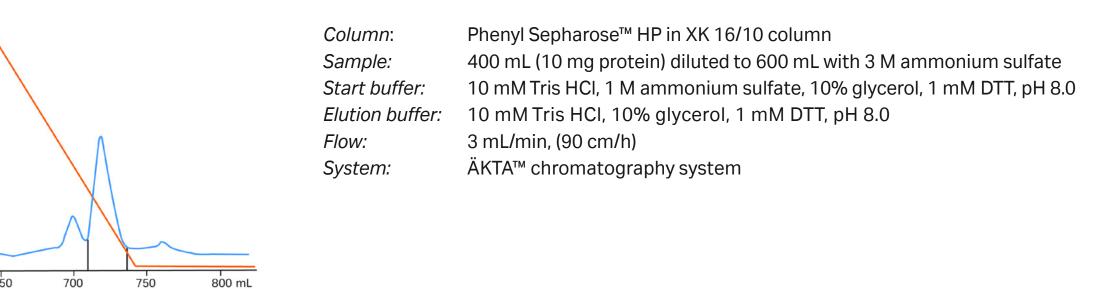
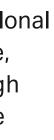


Fig 3.17. Concentration, and purification of HIV reverse transcriptase using Phenyl Sepharose™ HP in XK 16/10 column.





### **Performing a separation**

For guidelines on selecting resin, buffer, salt, and pH conditions, as well as guidelines on optimizing Chapter 2.

You can use these instructions as the basis to optimize your separation:

- (J
- To optimize separation, and avoid any deterioration in column performance, it is essential to and buffer correctly. Your samples must dissolve fully, be free from any particles or material to separation. See Chapter 2, and Appendix 1 for recommendations, and advice on sample prep
- Filter buffers, and samples after adding all salts, and additives. Use high-quality water, and c solutions using 0.45 μm or 0.22 μm filters. To avoid forming air bubbles in a packed column, a reproducible results, keep the column and buffers at the same temperature when you are pr
- To avoid problems with precipitation, check the salt stability window of the sample compone at concentrations near the stability limit of the target protein. For samples with unknown hy try this:

Start buffer: 1.5 M ammonium sulfate, 50 mM phosphate buffer, pH 7.0 Elution buffer: 50 mM phosphate buffer, pH 7.0



Note: You might need to reduce flow rates due to the viscosity of your chosen start buffer, sample characteristics, loading requirements, and the equipment you are using.

### First-time use or first use after long-term storage

| your method, see  |  |
|---|--|
| o prepare your sample<br>that can interfere with<br>paration.   | <ol> <li>Remove any ethanol. To do this, wash with 5 CV of distilled water or elution<br/>buffer.</li> <li>Flow: 1 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL</li> <li>5 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 5 mL</li> <li>0.8 mL/min, HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 16/10, 20 mL</li> <li>25 cm/h for Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance packed in larger columns</li> </ol> |
| chemicals. Filter<br>and ensure<br>reparing for a run.<br>ents. Avoid working<br>vdrophobic properties, | <ul> <li>2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer.</li> <li>Flow: 1 mL/min, HiTrap™ 1 mL</li> <li>5 mL/min, HiTrap™ 5 mL</li> <li>3 mL/min, HiPrep™ 16/10, 20 mL</li> <li>50 cm/h for Sepharose™ High Performance packed in larger columns</li> </ul>   |
|   | 3. Perform a blank elution to check conductivity.  |





### Separation by gradient elution

1 mL/min, HiTrap™ 1 mL Flow: 5 mL/min, HiTrap™ 5 mL 3 mL/min, HiPrep™ 16/10, 20 mL 50 to 100 cm/h for Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance packed in larger columns

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

- 1. Equilibrate column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline and conductivity are stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if needed). Filter, and apply it to the column
- 3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the UV baseline and conductivity are stable. This ensures that all unbound material has washed through the column.
- 4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV, increasing the proportion of elution buffer until the salt concentration reaches a minimum, that is, salt-free buffer.
- 5. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute the remaining hydrophobically bound material.
- 6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until conductivity reaches the required value.

### Separation by step elution

Flow:

- Collect fractions throughout the separation.
- 1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if needed). Filter, and apply it to the column.
- 4. Elute with 5 CV of elution buffer, and salt at your chosen concentration.
- 5. Repeat step 4 at lower salt concentrations until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
- 6. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.

ᡗᡒ  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \end{array} \right)$ 

- 1 mL/min, HiTrap™ 1 mL
- 5 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 5 mL
- 3 mL/min, HiPrep ™16/10, 20 mL
- 50 to 100 cm/h for Sepharose™ High Performance packed in larger
- columns

3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline, and conductivity are stable so that all unbound material has washed through the column.

- 7. Re-equilibrate.
  - You can save time by using higher flow rates during the salt-free wash and re-equilibration steps, but do not exceed the maximum recommended rate for the resin.
  - Check your column performance regularly by determining column efficiency, and peak symmetry. See Appendix 2 for more details.
  - Never leave columns or equipment in high-salt solutions.





### Cleaning

For daily use, Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance is stable in all common, aqueous Correctly preparing your samples and buffers and applying a salt-free buffer at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing backpressure, or complete buffers, 1 M NaOH, denaturing agents (8 M urea, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride), blockage are all signs that you need to clean the resin using more stringent procedures. 70% ethanol, 1 M acetic acid, 30% isopropanol, 30% acetonitrile, and up to 2% SDS.



Whenever possible, reverse the direction of flow during cleaning so that contaminants do not pass through the entire column length. The number of CV and time required for each cleaning step can vary according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Take care when changing the filter, as it can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

To remove common contaminants like precipitated proteins, use this procedure:

1 mL/min, HiTrap™ 1 mL Flow: 5 mL/min, HiTrap™ 5 mL 3 mL/min, HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 16/10, 20 mL 40 cm/h, with a contact time of 1 to 2 h, for Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance packed in larger columns

Note: You might need to reduce flow rates due to the condition of your column and the viscosity of your sample, buffers, or storage solutions.

- 1. Wash with up to 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.
- 2. Wash with at least 3 CV of water, or until the eluent pH is neutral.
- 3a. To start a new separation: re-equilibrate with at least 3 CV of start buffer, or until the correct eluent pH is achieved.
- 3b. For storage, wash with at least 5 CV of storage solution. Let the UV baseline stabilize before storing the column.

To remove lipids, lipoproteins, and very hydrophobic proteins, see Appendix 1.

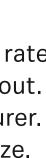
### **Chemical stability**

### **Storage**

For column storage, wash with 5 CV of distilled water followed by 5 CV of 20% ethanol. Degas the ethanol and water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid over-pressuring the column. Seal the column well to keep it from drying out. Whenever possible, use a storage and shipping device supplied by the manufacturer. Store your columns and unused resins at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.



To avoid forming air bubbles, make sure that your columns, buffers, and equipment are at the same temperature before using them.





### **Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins**

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins are based on a legacy base matrix, which is still used in many applications.

For developing new processes or protein purification methods, we currently recommend using one of our more recent resins based on the Capto<sup>™</sup> base matrix.

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins are based on a matrix of particles (with a mean size of 90 µm) made from 4% or 6% agarose that is highly cross-linked for chemical and physical stability. The matrices are substituted with hydrophobic ligands (phenyl, butyl, or octyl) coupled through a chemically stable O-ether or S-ether linkage (Fig 3.18). Two different degrees of substitution of the phenyl ligand provide a further chance to optimize binding capacity and elution conditions. The particle size and bed volumes remain stable despite changes in salt concentration, keeping separations fast at high flow rates. You can easily scale-up methods from small HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns to large-scale columns like AxiChrom<sup>™</sup> or Chromaflow<sup>™</sup> columns. The performance of Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins is well documented, and there are many examples of the smooth transfer from the laboratory to pilot scale and on to production.

### Ligand

Phenyl

Butyl-S

- $-S-(CH_2)_3-CH_3$
- $-O-(CH_2)_3-CH_3$ Butyl
- $-O-(CH_2)_7-CH_3$ Octyl

Fig 3.18. Ligands couple to Sepharose™ matrices through uncharged, chemically stable O-ether or S-ether linkages.

### **Resin characteristics**

**Table 3.10.** Characteristics of Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins for HIC

### Product

Phenyl Sep Fast Flow Phenyl Se **Fast Flow** Butyl-S Se Fast Flow Butyl Sep Fast Flow Octyl Sep **Fast Flow** 

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow resins are based on cross-linked, 6% agarose forming spherical particles (with a d<sub>50V</sub> of 90 µm) coupled to phenyl or butyl ligands through uncharged, chemically stable, O-ether or S-ether linkages. You can choose from two levels of phenyl ligand substitution.

Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 4 Fast Flow resins are based on cross-linked 4% agarose forming spherical particles (with a d<sub>50V</sub> of 90 µm) and coupled with butyl or octyl ligands through uncharged, chemically stable, O-ether linkages.

| :                           | Matrix                                       | pH stability*         | Maximum operating back<br>pressure <sup>†</sup> (MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------|--|
| epharose™ 6<br>v (high sub) | 6% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 13 | 90 µm  |
| epharose™ 6<br>v (low sub)  | 6% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 13 | 90 µm  |
| Sepharose™ 6<br>v           | 6% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 13 | 90 µm  |
| oharose™ 4<br>v             | 4% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 13 | 90 µm  |
| pharose™ 4<br>v             | 4% cross-linked agarose, spherical particles | Operational*: 3 to 13 | 90 µm  |

\*pH range where resin can be operated without significant change in function.

All ranges are estimates based on the experience and knowledge within Cytiva.

<sup>†</sup>Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the resin begins to compress.



### **Purification options**



Fig 3.19. Most HIC resins based on Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow or Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 4 Fast Flow are available prepacked in HiTrap™ or HiPrep™ columns and resin packs.

### Table 3.11. HIC products based on Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resin

### Product

HiTrap™ Pl HiTrap™ P

HiPrep™ 1

Phenyl Sep

HiTrap™ P

HiTrap™ P

Phenyl Sep

HiTrap™ Bi

HiTrap™ Bı

HiPrep™ 1

HiTrap™ Bı

HiTrap™ Bi

Butyl Seph

Butyl-S Se

HiTrap™ O

HiTrap™ O

HiPrep™ 1

Octyl Sepł

\*Recommendations are for separations at room temperature in aqueous buffers. See Appendix 4 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rates (mL/min) and vice versa. Note that the final working flow will depend also on factors such as column size and bed height, sample characteristics and loading conditions, the equipment used, and the backpressure that the equipment can withstand.

<sup>†</sup>Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the resin begins to compress.

| :                                 | Recommended<br>working flow* | Maximum flow* | Maximum operating<br>back pressure <sup>†</sup> (MPa/<br>psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------|--|
| Phenyl FF (high sub), 1 mL        | up to 1 mL/min               | 4 mL/min      | 0.3/43   |
| Phenyl FF (high sub), 5 mL        | up to 5 mL/min               | 20 mL/min     | 0.3/43   |
| 16/10 Phenyl FF (high sub), 20 mL | 2 to 10 mL/min               | 10 mL/min     | 0.15/22  |
| epharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub)  | 50 to 400 cm/h               | 750 cm/h      | 0.3/43   |
| Phenyl FF (low sub), 1 mL         | up to 1 mL/min               | 4 mL/min      | 0.3/43   |
| Phenyl FF (low sub), 5 mL         | up to 5 mL/min               | 20 mL/min     | 0.3/43   |
| epharose™ 6 Fast Flow (low sub)   | 50 to 400 cm/h               | 750 cm/h      | 0.3/43   |
| Butyl FF, 1 mL                    | up to 1 mL/min               | 4 mL/min      | 0.3/43   |
| Butyl FF, 5 mL                    | up to 5 mL/min               | 20 mL/min     | 0.3/43   |
| 16/10 Butyl FF, 20 mL             | 2 to 10 mL/min               | 10 mL/min     | 0.15/22  |
| Butyl-S FF, 1 mL                  | up to 1 mL/min               | 4 mL/min      | 0.3/43   |
| Butyl-S FF, 5 mL                  | up to 5 mL/min               | 20 mL/min     | 0.3/43   |
| oharose™ 4 Fast Flow              | 50 to 300 cm/h               | 400 cm/h      | 0.1/14   |
| Sepharose™ 6 FF                   | 50 to 400 cm/h               | 750 cm/h      | 0.3/43   |
| Octyl FF, 1 mL                    | up to 1 mL/min               | 4 mL/min      | 0.3/43   |
| Octyl FF, 5 mL                    | up to 5 mL/min               | 20 mL/min     | 0.3/43   |
| 16/10 Octyl FF, 20 mL             | 2 to 10 mL/min               | 10 mL/min     | 0.15/22  |
| pharose™ 4 Fast Flow              | 50 to 300 cm/h               | 400 cm/h      | 0.1/14   |
|                                   |                              |               |  |



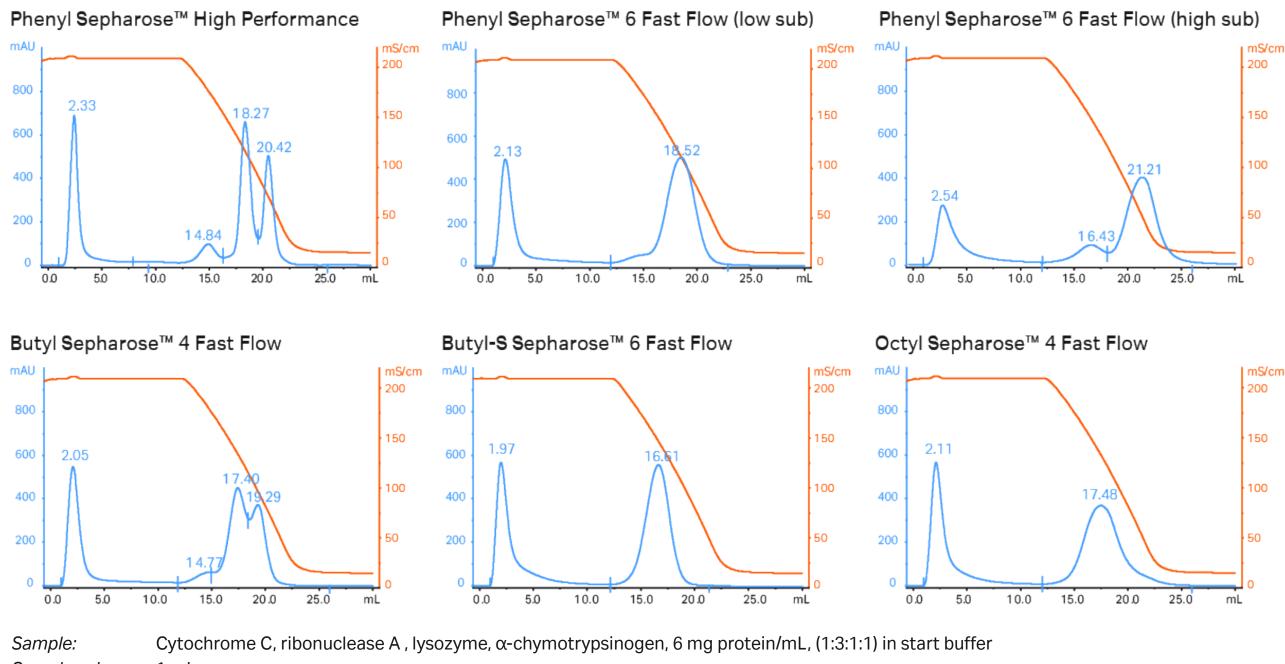


 $\overline{}$ 

The binding capacity of a HIC resin depends highly on the properties of the target protein and contaminants, the selectivity of the resin, and the binding conditions. You need to determine capacity empirically during resin screening and method development.



Proteins of interest separate differently on the resin with various hydrophobic characteristics (Fig 3.20). Select the resin that gives the optimal selectivity, resolution, and loading capacity at the lowest salt concentration.



| Sample volume:  | 1 mL  |
|-----------------|---|
| Sample load:    | 6 mg protein/mL resin   |
| Flow:           | 1.0 mL/min, (150 cm/h)  |
| Start buffer:   | 1.7 M (NH <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 0.1 M Na <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub> , pH 7.0 |
| Elution buffer: | 0.1 M Na <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub> , pH 7.0   |
| Gradient:       | 0% to 100% elution buffer in 10 CV  |
| System:         | ÄKTA™ chromatography system   |

Fig 3.20. Comparison of the different selectivity characteristics of various Sepharose<sup>™</sup> based HIC resins.

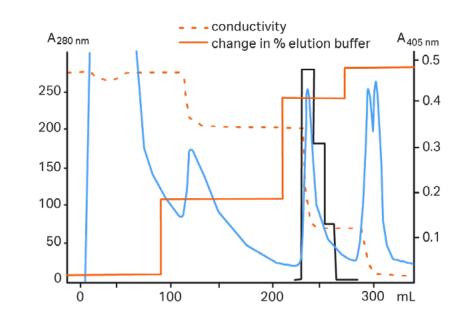
### **Purification examples**

### **Resin screening**

See Resin screening: Developing a monoclonal antibody purification in this chapter (Fig 3.15).

### **Capture: Enzyme purification**

Figure 3.21 shows a capture step for partial purification of an enzyme, alkaline phosphatase, from *E. coli* homogenate. We selected conditions to ensure that the target protein binds to the column while most of the contaminants wash directly through. We concentrated the enzyme and achieved an effective purification step.



| Column:         | HiPrep™ 16/10 Phenyl FF (high sub)                      |
|-----------------|---|
| Sample:         | E. coli homogenate, centrifuged, filtered, and desalted |
| Sample load:    | 30 mL   |
| Start buffer:   | 100 mM phosphate, 0.7 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0        |
| Elution buffer: | 100 mM phosphate, pH 7.0                                |
| Step elution:   | Sample application.                                     |
|                 | Wash through 37% elution buffer, 5 CV                   |
| Elution:        | 80% elution buffer, 3 CV                                |
| Wash:           | 100% elution buffer                                     |
| Flow:           | 5 mL/min, (150 cm/h)                                    |
| Detection:      | 280 nm  |
| System:         | ÄKTA™ chromatography system                             |
|                 |   |

Fig 3.21. Purification of alkaline phosphatase on Phenyl Sepharose™ Fast Flow (high sub) resin. The black line represents enzyme activity.

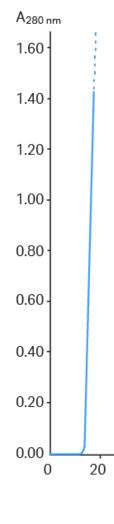


### **Capture: Recombinant Hepatitis B virus surface antigen** (r-HbsAg) from CHO cells

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is an infectious agent that causes acute and chronic hepatitis, cirrhosis, and primary hepatocellular carcinoma. World Health Organization estimates that 296 million people were living with chronic hepatitis B infection in 2019, with 1.5 million new infections each year.

For the noninfected population, scientists can produce effective vaccines at a large-scale by using recombinant technology to generate the recombinant Hepatitis B surface Antigen (r-HBsAg). Figure 3.22 shows the large-scale purification of r-HBsAg from a CHO cell culture supernatant. Since this protein is extremely hydrophobic, it binds strongly to most HIC resins. However, the mild hydrophobic properties of Butyl-S Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow enabled a successful purification, removing over 90% of impurities during the capture step.

Column: Sample: Sample load: Start buffer: Elution buffer: Wash buffer: Flow: System:



Butyl-S Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow packed in XK 50/20, 130 mL Concentrated CCS (containing approx. 12 mg of rHBsAg), 0. 6 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0 300 mL 20 mM sodium phosphate, 0.6 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0 10 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.0

- 30% isopropanol in elution buffer
- 2 L/h, (100 cm/h)
- ÄKTA<sup>™</sup> chromatography system

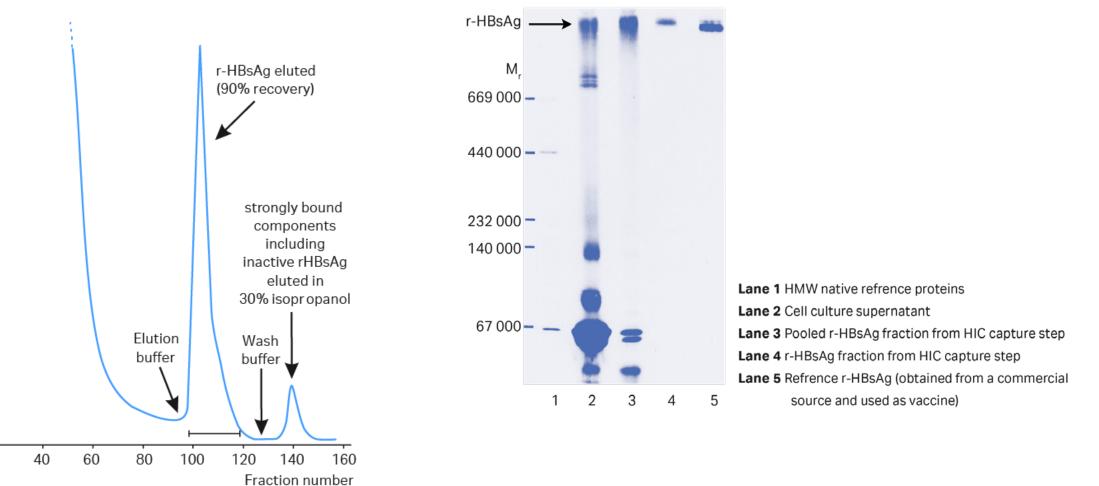


Fig 3.22. Large-scale purification of rHBsAg. Over 90% of impurities were removed by the HIC capture step (lane 3). Electrophoretic analysis (Gradient PAGE 4% to 30% under non-denaturing conditions) shows how purity increases after the HIC capture step. r-HBsAg is a particle of 22 nm, which is why the band appears at the top of the gel.





### Intermediate purification: Fab fragment

Figure 3.23 shows an optimized elution scheme for intermediate purification of a Fab fragment, developed from the resin screening in Figure 2.3, Chapter 2. We optimized conditions on a 20 mL column until we could use a step elution to maximize throughput and make full use of the concentrating effect of HIC. Then we scaled up the step to a 200 mL column

| Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub)                                 |
|--|
| in XK 16/20 (10 cm bed height), 20 mL                                    |
| Fab fraction from STREAMLINE™ SP, 80 mL                                  |
| 1 M (NH <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 50 mM NaAc, pH 5.0 |
| 50 mM NaAc, pH 5.0   |
| 5 mL/min   |
| Step gradient to 50% elution buffer                                      |
| ÄKTA™ chromatography system  |
| 280 nm   |
|  |

| Columns:        | Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub)<br>in XK 50/20, 200 mL          |
|-----------------|--|
| Sample:         | Fab fraction from STREAMLINE™ SP, 800 mL                                 |
| Start buffer:   | 1 M (NH <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 50 mM NaAc, pH 5.0 |
| Elution buffer: | 50 mM NaAc, pH 5.0   |
| Flow rate:      | Equilibration: 100 mL/min  |
|                 | Loading and elution: 50 mL/min   |
| Gradient:       | Step gradient to 50% elution buffer                                      |
| System:         | ÄKTA™ chromatography system  |
| Detection:      | 280 nm   |

| Purification protocol:     | CIPP  |
|----------------------------|---|
| Starting material:         | E. coli lysate                              |
| Capture:                   | STREAMLINE SP                               |
| Intermediate purification: | Phenyl Sepharose™ 6<br>Fast Flow (high sub) |
| Polishing:                 | SOURCE™ 15S                                 |

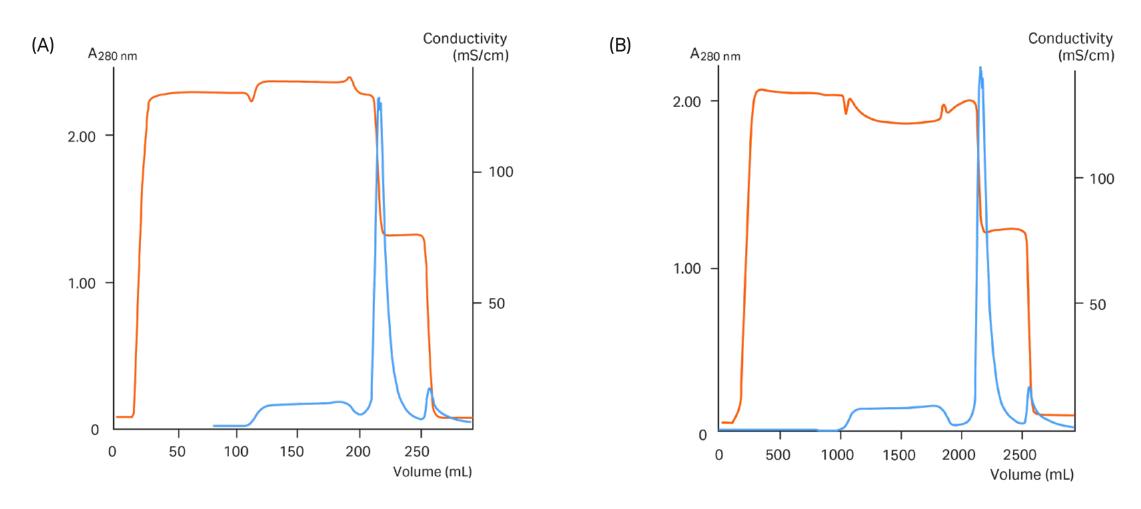


Fig 3.23. (A) Intermediate purification and (B) scale-up of a Fab fragment on Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) resin.

### Intermediate purification: Recombinant protein Annexin V

Figure 3.24 shows Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 4 Fast Flow used as an intermediate step during purification of a recombinant protein, annexin V, expressed in *E. coli*.

| Columns:        | Butyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast Flow in XK 16/20 column         |
|-----------------|---|
| Sample:         | Partially purified Annexin V expressed in E. coli, 5 mL |
| Start buffer:   | 20 mM sodium phosphate,                                 |
|                 | 1 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.0                            |
| Elution buffer: | 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.0                          |
| Flow velocity:  | 100 cm/h  |
| Gradient:       | 0% to 50% elution buffer, 20 CV                         |
| Detection:      | 280 nm  |
| System:         | ÄKTA™ chromatography system                             |
|                 |   |

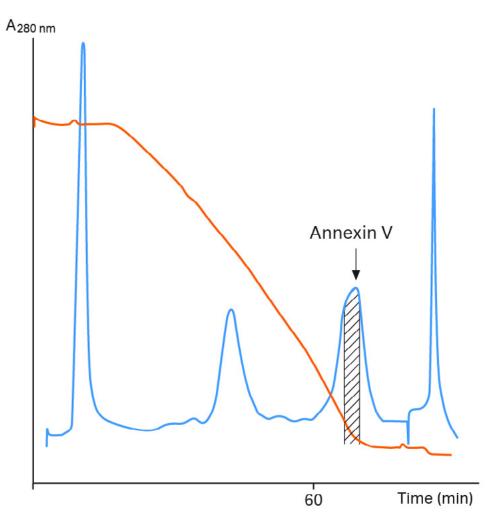


Fig 3.24. Intermediate purification of a recombinant protein.





### **Performing a separation**

See Chapter 2 for guidelines on selecting resins, buffer, salt concentration, and pH, and optimizing your method. You can use the instructions here as the basis for optimizing your separation.



To optimize separation and avoid any deterioration in column performance, it is essential to prepare your sample and buffer correctly. Your samples must dissolve fully and be free from any particles or material that can interfere with separation. See Chapter 2 and Appendix 1 for recommendations and advice on sample preparation.



Filter buffers and samples after adding all salts and additives. Use high-quality water and chemicals. Filter solutions using 1 µm filters or less. To avoid forming air bubbles in a packed column and ensure reproducible results, keep the column and buffers at the same temperature when you're preparing for a run.



To avoid problems with precipitation, check the salt stability window of the sample components. Avoid working at concentrations near the stability limit of the target protein. For samples with unknown hydrophobic properties, try this:

Start buffer: 1.5 M ammonium sulfate, 50 mM phosphate buffer, pH 7.0 Elution buffer: 50 mM phosphate buffer, pH 7.0



Note: You might need to reduce flow rates due to the viscosity of your chosen start buffer, sample characteristics, loading requirements, and the equipment you are using.

### First-time use or first use after long-term storage

- 1. Remove any ethanol. To do this, wash with 5 CV of distilled water or elution buffer. Flow: 1 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL 5 mL/min, HiTrap™ 5 mL 2 mL/min, HiPrep™ 16/10, 20 mL 50 cm/h for Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow packed in larger columns 2. Wash with 5 CV of start buffer. Flow: 1 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL
  - 5 mL/min, HiTrap™ 5 mL 5 mL/min, HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 16/10, 20 mL up to 150 cm/h for Sepharose™ Fast Flow packed in larger columns
- 3. Perform a blank elution to check the conductivity profile.



### Separation by gradient elution

Flow: 1 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL 5 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 5 mL and HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 16/10, 20 mL up to 150 cm/h for Sepharose™ Fast Flow packed in larger columns

Collect fractions throughout the separation.

- 1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline and conductivity are stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if needed). Filter and apply to the column.
- 3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline and conductivity are stable so that all unbound material has washed through the column.
- 4. Begin elution using a gradient volume of 10 to 20 CV, increasing the proportion of elution buffer until the salt concentration reaches a minimum (i.e., salt-free buffer).
- 5. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.
- 6. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the conductivity reaches your required value.

### Separation by step elution

Flow:

- 1. Equilibrate the column with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer or until the baseline, eluent pH, and conductivity are stable.
- 2. Adjust the sample to your chosen salt concentration (and pH if needed). Filter and apply to the column.
- 3. Wash with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the UV baseline and conductivity are stable so that all unbound material has washed through the column.
- 5. Repeat step 4 at lower salt concentrations until the target protein(s) has been eluted.
- 6. Wash with 2 to 5 CV of salt-free elution buffer to elute any remaining hydrophobically bound material.

- 1 mL/min, HiTrap™ 1 mL 5 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 5 mL and HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 16/10, 20 mL
- up to 150 cm/h for Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow packed in larger columns
- Collect fractions throughout the separation.

- 4. Elute with 5 CV of elution buffer and salt at your chosen concentration.
- 7. Re-equilibrate with 5 to 10 CV of start buffer, or until the conductivity reaches your required value.

You can save time by using higher flow rates during the salt-free wash and re-equilibration steps, but do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the resin.

- Check your column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 2 for more details.
- Never leave columns or equipment in high-salt solutions.





### Cleaning

Correctly preparing your samples and buffers and applying a salt-free buffer at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing backpressure, or complete blockage are all signs that you need to clean the resin using more stringent procedures.



Whenever possible, reverse the direction of flow during cleaning so that contaminants do not pass through the entire column length. The number of CV and time required for each cleaning step can vary according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. Take care when changing the filter, as it can affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

To remove common contaminants like precipitated proteins, use this procedure:

Flow: 1 mL/min, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL 5 mL/min, HiTrap™ 5 mL 5 mL/min, HiPrep™ 16/10, 20 mL 40 cm/h, with a contact time of 1 to 2 h, for Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow packed in larger columns

Note: You might need to reduce flow rates due to the condition of your column and the viscosity of your sample, buffers, or storage solutions.

1. Wash with up to 4 CV of 1 M NaOH.

2. Wash with at least 3 CV of water, or until eluent pH is neutral.

3a. To start a new separation, re-equilibrate with at least 3 CV of start buffer, or until you achieve the correct eluent pH.

3b. For storage, wash with at least 5 CV of storage solution. Let the UV baseline stabilize before storing the column.

To remove lipids, lipoproteins, and very hydrophobic proteins, see Appendix 1.

### **Chemical stability**

For daily use, HIC resins based on Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow or Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 4 Fast Flow are stable in all common aqueous buffers, 1 M NaOH, 70% ethanol, 30% isopropanol, denaturing agents (6 M guanidine hydrochloride), 1 M acetic acid, 30% isopropanol, 30% acetonitrile, and up to 2% SDS.

### Storage

For column storage, wash with 5 CV of distilled water followed by 5 CV of 20% ethanol. Degas the ethanol and water mixture thoroughly and apply at a low flow rate to avoid over-pressuring the column. Seal the column well to keep it from drying out. Whenever possible, use a storage and shipping device supplied by the manufacturer. Store your columns and unused resins at 4°C to 30°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.



To avoid forming air bubbles, make sure your columns, buffers, and equipment are at the same temperature before using them.



### 04purification strategy (CIPP)



To ensure efficient, reproducible purification giving the required degree of purity, it is beneficial to develop a multi-step process using the purification strategy of Capture, Intermediate Purification, and Polishing (CIPP), shown in Figure 4.1.

CIPP is used in both the pharmaceutical industry, and in the research laboratory to ensure faster method development, a shorter time to pure product, and a good economy. This chapter gives a brief overview of this approach, which can be recommended for any multi-step protein purification. The <u>Strategies for Protein Purification Handbook</u> is a guide for planning efficient and effective protein purification strategies. An important first step for any purification is correct sample preparation; this is covered in more detail in Appendix 1 and Chapter 2.

Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC) offers selectivity based on the hydrophobic properties of the target protein and can be a useful complement to other chromatography techniques that separate according to specificity, charge, or size. HIC can be used for capture, intermediate purification, or polishing steps, according to the demands for the specific application. The need for samples to be in an elevated salt concentration to promote hydrophobic interaction makes HIC well-suited for capture steps after samples have been subjected to clean-up by ammonium sulfate precipitation or for intermediate steps directly after an ion exchange separation. Under both circumstances, the partially purified sample is already in a high-salt solution, and other than the addition of more salt, no further preparation is required, saving time. Since samples can be concentrated and eluted in a reduced volume when using HIC, fractions can also be transferred directly to SEC.

HIC can be used with stepwise elution for a rapid capture step or with gradient elution to achieve the highest resolution in a polishing step.

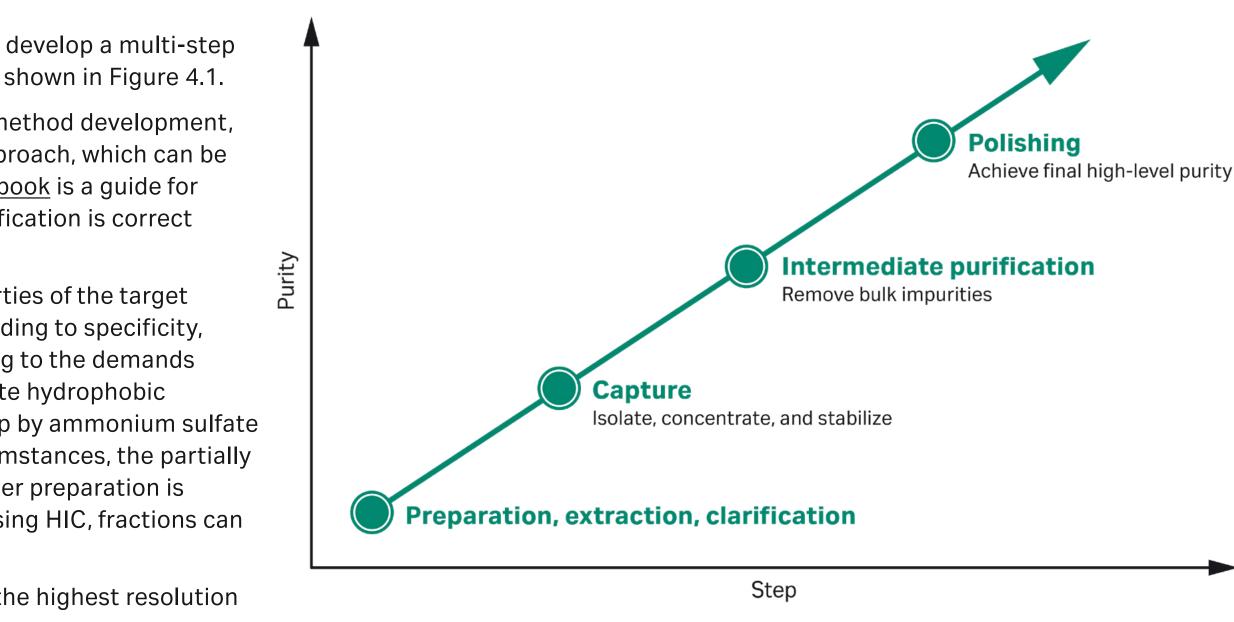


Fig 4.1. Strategy for protein purification.

ography:

### **Applying CIPP**

Imagine the purification has three phases: Capture, Intermediate Purification, and Polishing.

5

Assign a specific objective to each step within the purification process.

The purification problem associated with a particular step will depend greatly upon the properties of the starting material. Thus, the objective of a purification step will vary according to its position in the process.

In the capture phase, the objectives are to *isolate, concentrate, and stabilize* the target product. The product should be concentrated and transferred to an environment that will conserve potency or activity.

During the intermediate purification phase, the objectives are to remove most of the bulk impurities, such as other proteins and nucleic acids, endotoxins, and viruses.

In the *polishing phase*, most impurities have already been removed. The objective is to *achieve final purity* by removing any remaining trace impurities or closely related substances.



The optimal selection and combination of purification techniques for *Capture, Intermediate Purification, and* Polishing are crucial for efficient purification.

### Selection and combination of purification techniques

Proteins are purified using purification techniques that separate according to differences in specific properties, as shown in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1.** Types of chromatographic techniques, and their properties

| Technique   | Property                                    |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Hydrophobicity interaction chromatography (HIC)                 | Hydrophobicity                              |  |  |
| Reversed phase chromatography (RPC)                             | Hydrophobicity                              |  |  |
| Ion exchange chromatography (IEX)                               | Charge                                      |  |  |
| Size exclusion chromatography (SEC). Also called gel filtration | Size  |  |  |
| Affinity chromatography (AC)                                    | Biorecognition (ligand specificity)         |  |  |
| Multimodal chromatography (MM)                                  | A combination of several protein properties |  |  |

In a multistep approach, factors to consider for a successful outcome are speed, recovery, resolution, or capacity. Each technique will have its characteristics and suitability for achieving any of these four performance parameters.

**Capacity**, in the simple model shown, refers to the amount of target protein loaded during purification. In some cases, the amount of sample that can be loaded will be limited by volume (as in size exclusion chromatography) or by large amounts of contaminants rather than the amount of the target protein.

**Speed** is most important at the beginning of purification where contaminants, such as proteases, must be removed as quickly as possible.

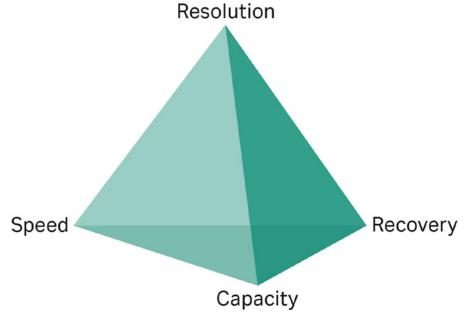
**Recovery** becomes increasingly important as the purification proceeds because of the increased value of the purified product. Recovery is influenced by destructive processes in the sample, and by unfavorable conditions on the column.

**Resolution** is achieved by the selectivity of the technique, and the efficiency, and selectivity of the chromatography matrix in producing narrow peaks. In general, the resolution is most difficult to achieve in the final stages of purification when impurities and target protein are likely to have very similar properties.

 $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ کی

Select a technique to meet the objectives for the purification step.

Choose logical combinations of purification techniques based on the main benefits of the technique and the condition of the sample at the beginning or end of each step.



**Fig 4.2.** Every technique offers a balance between resolution, capacity, speed, and recovery.







A guide to the suitability of each purification technique for the stages in CIPP is shown in Table 4.2.

| Table 4.2. Suitability | v of       | purification | technia | ues for CIPP |
|------------------------|------------|--------------|---------|--------------|
|                        | , <u> </u> |              |         |              |

| <b>Typical characteristics</b> |            |           | Purification phase |              |           | Conditio  |
|--------------------------------|------------|-----------|--------------------|--------------|-----------|---|
| Method                         | Resolution | Capacity  | Capture            | Intermediate | Polishing | Sample start<br>conditions                                |
| AC                             | +++ or ++  | +++ 0r ++ | +++                | ++           | +         | Various binding conditions                                |
| IMAC                           | +++        | ++        | +++                | ++           | +         | Low concentration of<br>imidazole, pH > 7.0               |
| SEC                            | ++         | +         | +                  |              | +++       | Most conditions acceptable,<br>limited sample volume      |
| IEX                            | +++        | +++       | +++                | +++          | +++       | Low ionic strength. pH depends on protein and IEX type    |
| HIC                            | +++        | ++        | ++                 | +++          | +++       | High ionic strength, addition of salt required            |
| RPC                            | +++        | ++        |                    | +            | ++        | lon-pair reagents and organic modifiers might be required |
| MMC                            | +++        | ++        | ++                 | +++          | +++       | Various binding conditions                                |
|                                |            |           | l                  |              |           |   |

Minimize sample handling between purification steps by combining techniques to avoid the need for sample conditioning. The product should be eluted from the first column in conditions suitable for the start conditions of the next column (see Table 4.2).

Ammonium sulfate, often used for sample clarification and concentration (see Appendix 1), leaves the sample in a high-salt environment. Consequently HIC, which requires high salt to enhance binding to the resins, becomes the ideal choice as the capture step. The salt concentration and the total sample volume will be significantly reduced after elution from the HIC column. Dilution of the fractionated sample or rapid buffer exchange using a desalting column will prepare it for the next IEX or AC step.

Size exclusion chromatography (SEC) is a non-binding technique unaffected by buffer conditions, but with limited volume capacity. SEC is well suited for use after any of the concentrating techniques (IEX, HIC, AC) since the target protein will be eluted in a reduced volume, and the components from the buffer will not affect the SEC process.

The selection of the final strategy will always depend upon specific sample properties and the required level of purification. Logical combinations of techniques for basic research are shown in Figure 4.3.

Capture AC AC HIC AC IEX X1 MD 3 Intermediate R. HIC IEX IEX 1 20 DO RA 40 9 Polishing SEC or SEC SEC SEC IEX 9 19 20 30 40 50 80 70 min 0 10 20 30 40 50 80 70 min 1 19 30 30 40 50 60 70 min

Fig 4.3. Typical combinations of chromatography techniques.



### conditions

Sample end

Specific elution conditions

High concentration of imidazole, 500 mM NaCl, pH > 7.0

 $\overline{7}$ 

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

 $\left( \begin{array}{c} \end{array} \right)$ 

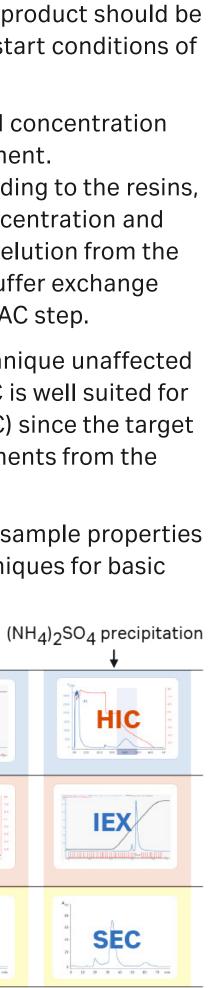
Buffer exchange possible, diluted sample

ds High ionic strength or pH changed

Low ionic strength

Organic solvents (risk for loss of biological activity)

High ionic strength and/or pH change





### 5

For any capture step, select the technique showing the most effective binding to the target protein while binding as few of the contaminants as possible, that is, the technique with the highest selectivity, and/or capacity for the target protein.

A sample is purified using a combination of techniques, and alternative selectivities. For example, in an IEX-HIC-SEC strategy, the capture step selects according to differences in charge (IEX), the intermediate purification step according to differences in hydrophobicity (HIC), and the final polishing step according to differences in size (SEC).

If nothing is known about the target protein use IEX-HIC-SEC. This combination of techniques can be regarded as a standard protocol.

Consider the use of both anion and cation exchange chromatography to give different selectivities within the same purification strategy.

### **HIC** as a capture step

The objective of a capture step is to quickly bind the protein(s) of interest from the crude sample, and isolate them from critical contaminants such as proteases, and glycosidases. The target protein(s) is concentrated and transferred to an environment that will conserve potency/activity. Removal of other critical contaminants may also be achieved by careful optimization of binding conditions.

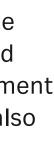
The focus is on capacity and speed in a capture step. It may be advisable to compromise on resolution to maximize the capacity and/or speed of the separation in this first step.

HIC resin for capture steps should offer high speed and high capacity.

- 1. Recommended: Capto<sup>™</sup> chromatography resins (75 µm particle size) excellent pressure-flow properties, and good resolution for large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 700 cm/h.
- 2. For established processes: Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow (90 µm particle size) chromatography resin—good resolution at flows up to 300 cm/h. If need higher productivity, the process can be modified to adapt to Capto<sup>™</sup> chromatography resins.



Select start conditions that minimize binding of contaminants, and so help to maximize the binding capacity for the target protein(s). This will facilitate a fast, simple step elution of the concentrated target protein(s).









### Purification of recombinant human epidermal growth factor (h-EGF)

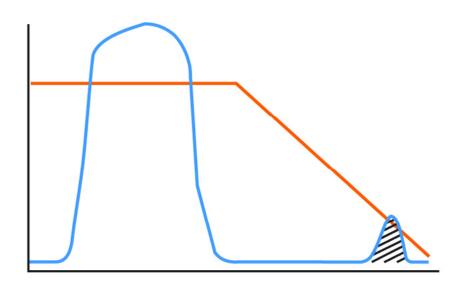
This purification represents a classical three-step purification process, using HIC-IEX-SEC, for the purification of human epidermal growth factor (h-EGF) expressed as an extracellular product by Saccharomyces cerevisiae.

The strategy was developed as follows: initial resin screening experiments for the capture step were performed on four different HIC resins (Fig 4.5). Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) chromatography resin was selected as giving the optimal selectivity for EGF, a high binding capacity with low back pressure.

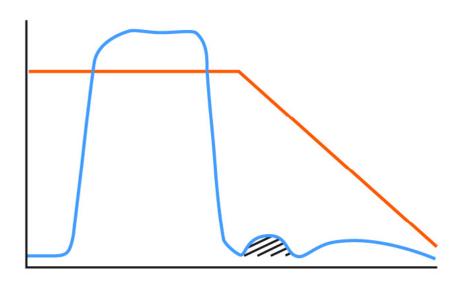
| Purification protocol: CIPP |   |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Starting material:          | Cell culture supernatant                    |  |
| Capture:                    | Phenyl Sepharose™ 6<br>Fast Flow (high sub) |  |
| Intermediate purification:  | Q Sepharose™ High Performance               |  |
| Polishing:                  | Superdex™ 75 prep grade                     |  |

Fig 4.4. Classical HIC-IEX-SEC purification strategy.

### **Resin characteristics for EGF purification**



- Very high selectivity
- Very high binding capacity



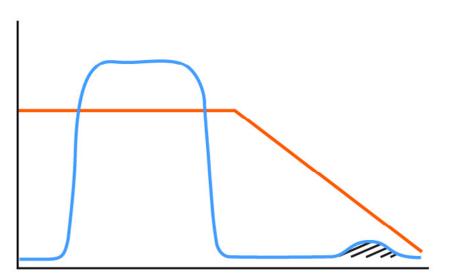
### Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow (low sub)

- EGF comes in the wash with binding buffer
- Low selectivity for EGF

### Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> **High Performance**

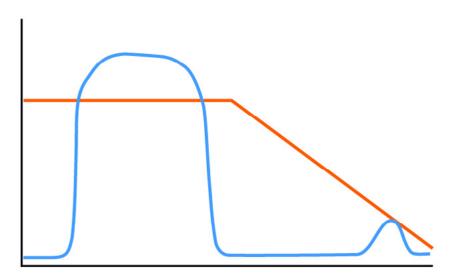
• Higher backpressure than for Fast Flow resins

Fig 4.5. Resin screening.



### Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow (high sub)

- Very high selectivity
- High binding capacity
- Low back pressure



### **Butyl Sepharose**<sup>™</sup> 4 Fast Flow

- Was not possible to elute with low salt buffer
- Binds too tightly

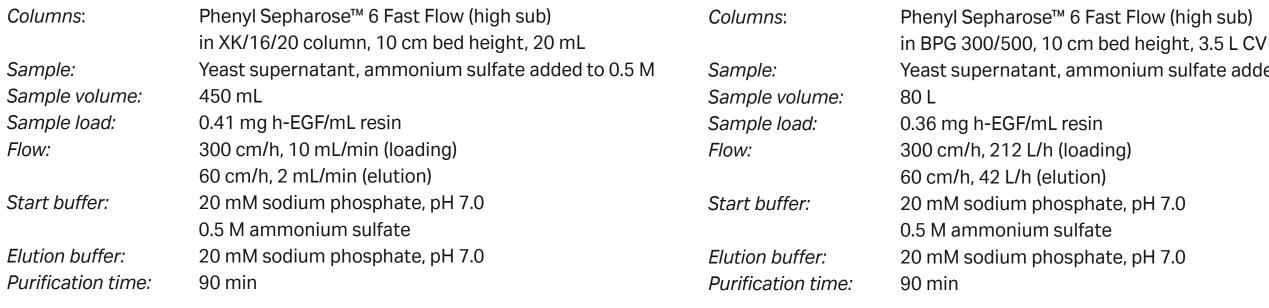


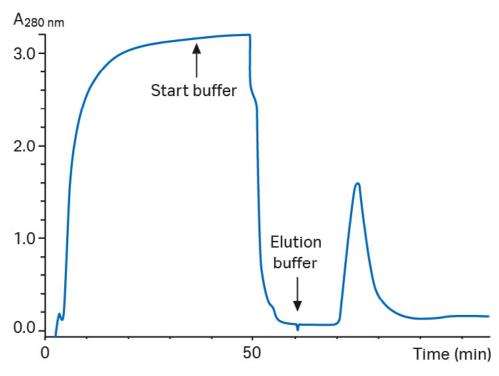
As Figure 4.6 shows, development work was performed at a small scale using a step elution on XK columns packed with Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow (high sub) chromatography resin and then scaled up to production scale using a BPG 300/500 column.

A high-resolution, anion exchanger, Q Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance chromatography resin, was chosen for intermediate purification to reach a high degree of purity in the second step (> 96%).

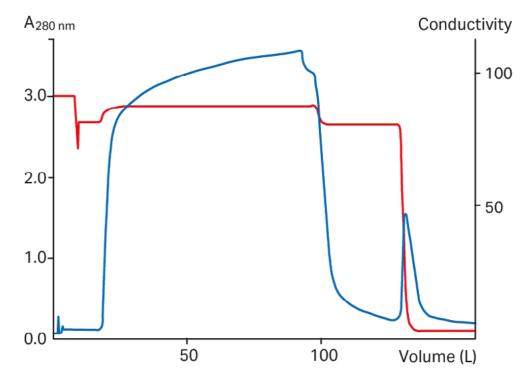
SEC on Superdex<sup>™</sup> 75 prep grade chromatography column was selected for final polishing in order to achieve a high final purity by separating polymers, and unwanted buffer salts from the EGF product.

The start material was clarified cell culture supernatant supplied by Chiron-Cetus Corp., Emeryville, USA. The concentration of EGF in the start material was 0.018 mg/mL, and the overall protein content was 63 mg/mL. This three-step procedure gave a product purity of 99% as determined by RPC, and an overall yield of 73%.





**Fig 4.6.** Development and scale-up of the capture step.



Yeast supernatant, ammonium sulfate added to 0.5 M

### **HIC for intermediate purification**

The objective of intermediate purification steps is to remove most of the significant impurities such as proteins, nucleic acids, endotoxins, and viruses. In a typical intermediate purification step, speed is less critical since sample volume has been reduced, and damaging contaminants have been removed during capture. Focus is on capacity and resolution to maintain productivity (amount of target protein processed per column in unit time) and to achieve as high selectivity (purity) as possible. Consequently, a gradient elution will usually be required.



Use a technique with a selectivity that is complementary to that used in the capture step.

Resins for intermediate purification should offer high capacity and high resolution. Select as follows:

- 1. Recommended for new processes: Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes (40 µm particle size) chromatography resin — excellent pressure-flow properties with high resolution for large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 600 cm/h.
- 2. Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance (34 µm particle size) chromatography resin has been used in established processes for high resolution at flows up to 150 cm/h. If higher productivity is needed, the process can be modified to adapt to Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes chromatography resins.





87

### **Purification of Fab fragment**

Figure 4.7 shows a classic protocol, IEX-HIC-SEC, for purification of a Fab fragment against the gp 120 envelope of HIV-1. The fragment, which was expressed in the periplasmic space of *E. coli*, has a molecular mass of M<sub>r</sub> 50 000, and isoelectric point (pl) ~ 11. The high pl made cation exchange the most suitable ion exchange step for the initial capture step. The high capacity and good resolution of Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) chromatography resin were well-suited for intermediate purification, followed by a polishing step on SEC.

Purificatio

Starting ma

Capture:

Intermediat

Polishing:

Columns:

Sample volume: Start buffer:

Elution buffer: Flow: Gradient: System:

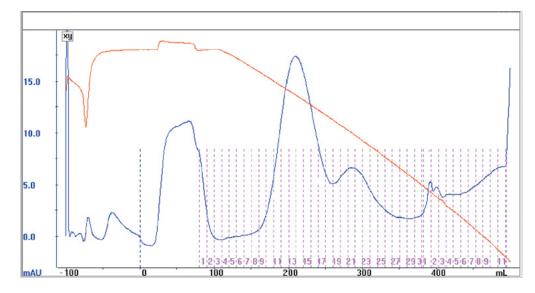
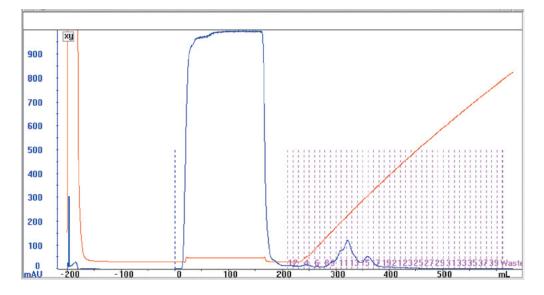


Fig 4.7. Protocol for purification of a Fab fragment against the gp 120 envelope of HIV-1.

| on protocol: CIPP |   |  |  |
|-------------------|---|--|--|
| aterial:          | <i>E. coli</i> periplasmic expressed target protein |  |  |
|                   | SP Sepharose™ Fast Flow                             |  |  |
| te purification:  | Phenyl Sepharose™ 6<br>Fast Flow (high sub)         |  |  |
|                   | Superdex™ 75 prep grade                             |  |  |

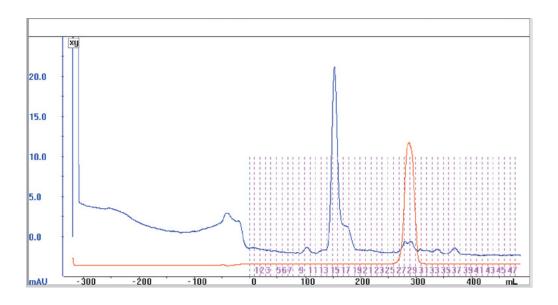
| Columns:       | SP Sepharose™ Fast Flow packed in XK 16/10    |
|----------------|---|
| Sample volume: | 150 mL  |
| Buffer:        | BufferPrep CIEX, pH range 3 to7.5, running pl |
| Gradient:      | 0 to 1.0 M NaCl in 20 CV                      |
| Flow rate:     | 150 cm/h, (5 mL/min))                         |
| System:        | ÄKTA™ chromatography system                   |
|                |   |

### Active fractions pooled: 10–14



Columns: Buffer: Sample volume: Flow: System:

HiLoad<sup>™</sup> 26/60 Superdex<sup>™</sup> 75 prep grade, 320 mL 150 mM NaCl, 20 mM phosphate, pH 7.0 8 mL, pooled from Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow 50 cm/h, (4.4 mL/min) ÄKTA™ chromatography system



Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow (high sub) packed in XK 16/10, 20 mL 50 mL, pooled from SP Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow 1.0 M ammonium sulfate, 30 mM phosphate, pH 6.0 30 mM phosphate, pH 6.0 150 cm/h, (5 mL/min) 0% to 100% elution buffer in 20 CV ÄKTA™ chromatography system

Active fractions pooled: 11–16







### **HIC** as a polishing step

At the polishing stage of a purification protocol, most impurities have been removed except for trace amounts or closely related substances such as structural variants of the target protein, nucleic acids, viruses, or endotoxins. The purpose of the separation is to reduce these variants and any other trace contaminants to acceptable levels for the application. In contrast to capture steps where a fast, high capacity step elution is mostly used, a polishing step will therefore focus on achieving the highest possible resolution.

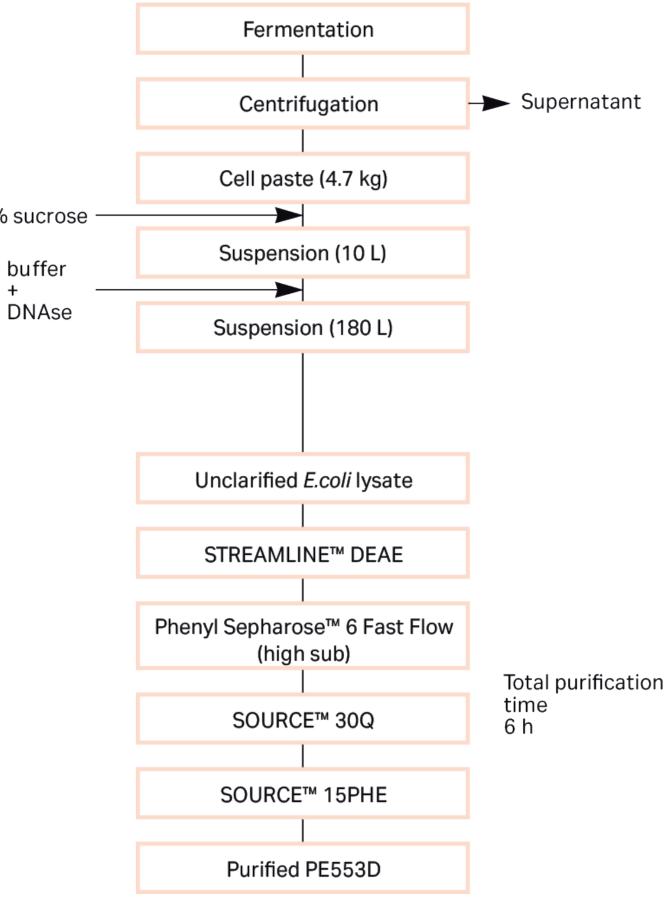
Resins for polishing steps should offer the highest possible resolution. Select as follows:

- 1. Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes (40 µm particle size) chromatography resin excellent pressure-flow properties for large-scale applications using flow velocities up to 600 cm/h.
- 2. SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15 (15 µm mean particle size) chromatography resin if other resins do not offer the required selectivity.
- لى ا Optimize the gradient elution to maximize selectivity. Use high-efficiency resin with small bead sizes to improve resolution.
- $\widehat{\phantom{a}}$ Note that if HIC is used as a polishing step, it may be necessary to remove excess salt using a desalting/buffer exchange step.

### Purification of a recombinant Pseudomonas aeruginosa exotoxin A, PE553D

Figure 4.8 shows a four-step purification process, using expanded bed adsorption (EBA) followed by HIC-IEX-HIC, for the purification of a genetically modified recombinant P. aeruginosa exotoxin A (M, 66 000) expressed in the periplasm of *E. coli*. The strategy used here resulted in a highly purified exotoxin A that took less than half the time of a conventional approach.

20% sucrose



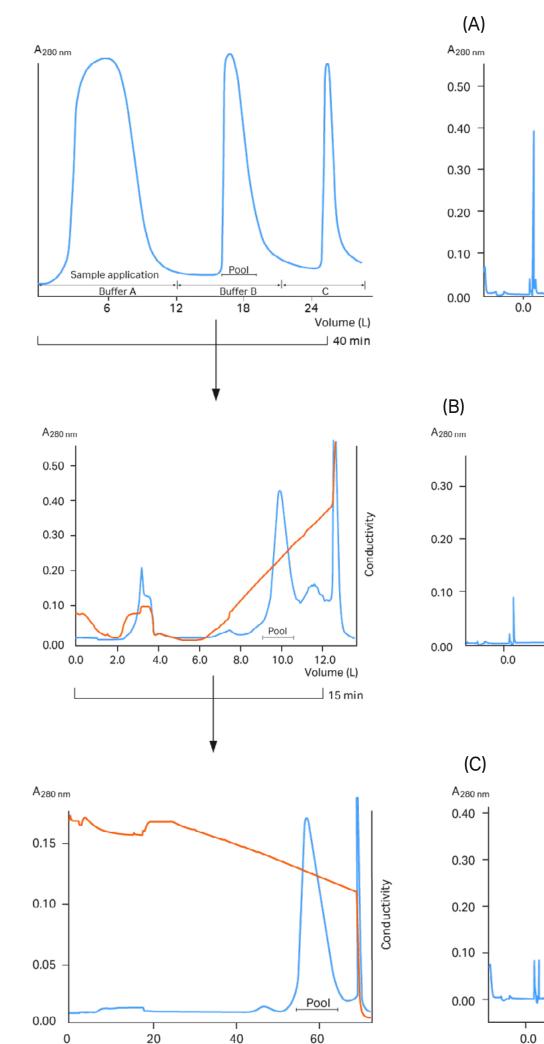
| Purification protocol: CIPF | )                                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Starting material:          | Unclarified <i>E. coli</i> homogenate |
| Capture:                    | STREAMLINE™ DEAE                      |
| Intermediate purification:  | Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow         |
| Intermediate purification:  | SOURCE™ 30Q                           |
| Polishing:                  | SOURCE™ PHE                           |
|                             |                                       |

Table 4.8. Four-step purification process.



### ography

| Columns:                 | Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub), in BPG 200/500 (i.d. 200 mm, 150 mm bed height), 4.7 L |
|--------------------------|--|
| Sample:                  | 4.5 L of the pool from EBA adjusted to 0.6 M ammonium sulfate                                    |
| Start buffer:            | 50 mM phosphate, 0.7 M ammonium sulfate, pH 7.4  |
| Elution buffer:<br>Flow: | 20 mM phosphate, pH 7.0<br>120 cm/h  |

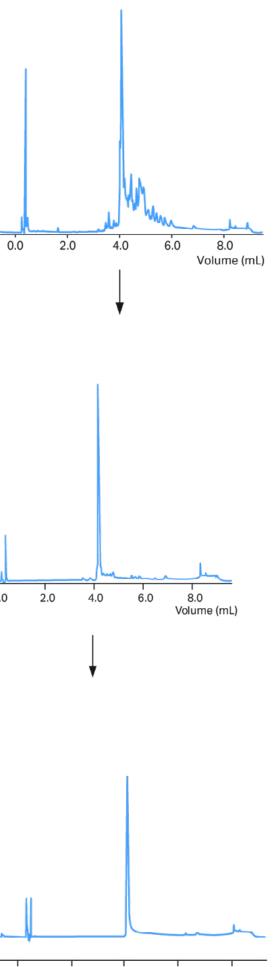


Time (min)

| Columns:        | SOURCE™ 30Q in FineLINE™ 100, (50 mm bed          |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | height), 375 mL                                   |
| Sample:         | Pooled fraction from Phenyl Sepharose™            |
|                 | 6 Fast Flow, diluted 1 to 3 with distilled water, |
|                 | 1.5 L/cycle applied                               |
| Start buffer:   | 20 mM phosphate, pH 7.4                           |
| Elution buffer: | 1.0 M sodium chloride, 20 mM phosphate, pH 7.4    |
| Gradient:       | 0% to 50% elution buffer, 20 CV                   |
| Flow:           | 600 cm/h  |
|                 |   |

| Columns:        | SOURCE™ 15PHE, column 35 mm i.d.,           |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | 100 mm bed height                           |
| Sample:         | Pooled SOURCE™ 30Q fraction, adjusted to    |
|                 | 1.0 M ammonium sulfate, 0.5 L/cycle applied |
| Start buffer:   | 1.0 M ammonium sulfate, 50 mM phosphate,    |
|                 | pH 7.4                                      |
| Elution buffer: | 50 mM phosphate, pH 7.4                     |
| Gradient:       | 0% to 45% elution buffer, 15 CV             |





4.0

6.0

8.0

Volume (mL)

2.0

Exotoxin A was captured directly from unclarified *E. coli* homogenate by an ion exchange column. The collected fraction was transferred directly to an intermediate purification step using Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) chromatography resin to remove a substantial part of the UV absorbing material that could interfere with the following steps (Fig 4.9A). Note that a Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow matrix was used, rather than Sepharose™ High Performance, as this was a large-scale purification, and a rapid step elution rather than a higher resolution gradient elution was required.

A second intermediate purification used an anion exchanger, SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30Q chromatography resin, to remove most of the remaining contaminants, based on differences in their net surface charge (Fig 4.9B).

HIC was used again for the polishing step, this time using a gradient elution to take full advantage of the high resolution offered by the smaller particle size of SOURCE™ 15PHE chromatography resin (Fig 4.9C). The process resulted in a pure protein, according to SDS-PAGE and RPC analysis, and the overall recovery was 51%.

| Columns:        | Analytical RPC column                                  |
|-----------------|--|
| Sample:         | (A) Pool from Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) |
|                 | (B) Pool from SOURCE™ 30Q                              |
|                 | (C) Pool from SOURCE™ 15PHE                            |
| Sample load:    | 50 μL  |
| Start buffer:   | 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) in water               |
| Elution buffer: | 0.1% TFA in acetonitrile                               |
| Gradient:       | 25% to 75% B over 47 min                               |
| Flow:           | 150 μL/min   |
|                 |  |







### Alternative techniques for polishing steps

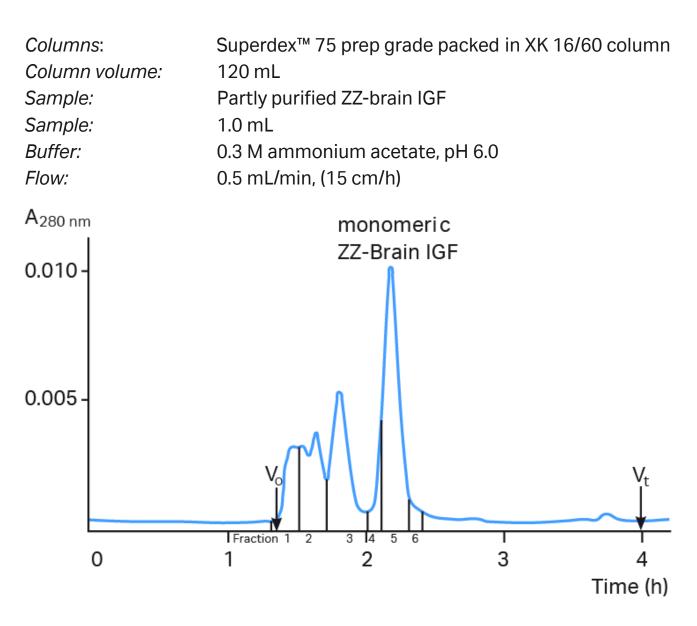
Most commonly, separations by charge, hydrophobicity or affinity will have been used in earlier stages of a purification strategy so that high-resolution SEC is an excellent choice for the final polishing step. The product can be purified, and transferred into the required buffer in one step, and dimers, and aggregates can be removed, as shown in Figure 4.10.

SEC is also the slowest of the chromatography techniques, and the size of the column determines the volume of sample that can be applied. It is therefore most logical to use SEC after techniques that reduce sample volume so that smaller columns can be used. Resins for polishing steps should offer the highest possible resolution.

RPC can also be considered for a polishing step, provided that the target protein can withstand the run conditions. Reversed phase chromatography (RPC) separates proteins, and peptides based on hydrophobicity. RPC is a high-selectivity (high-resolution) technique, usually requiring the use of organic solvents. The RPC technique is used for purity check analyses when recovery of activity and tertiary structure is not essential. Since many proteins are denatured by organic solvents, RPC is not generally recommended for protein purification. However, in the polishing phase, when most protein impurities have been removed, RPC can be an excellent technique, particularly for small target proteins that are not often denatured by organic solvents.

(J

CIPP does not mean that there must always be three purification steps. For example, capture and intermediate purification may be achievable in a single step, as may intermediate purification and polishing. Similarly, purity demands may be so low that a rapid capture step is sufficient to achieve the desired result. For purification of therapeutic biomolecules, a fourth or fifth purification step may be required to fulfill the highest purity, and safety demands. The number of steps used will always depend upon the purity requirements and intended use for the protein.



**Fig 4.10.** Final polishing step: separation of monomers, dimers, and multimers on Superdex 75<sup>™</sup> prep grade chromatography column.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Large-scale purification

Our BioProcess<sup>™</sup> chromatography resin family includes resins widely used by biopharmaceutical manufacturers. The support for these products comprise validated manufacturing methods, secure long-term chromatography resin supply, safe handling, and regulatory support files (RSF) to assist process validation and submissions to regulatory authorities. In addition, the Fast Trak<sup>™</sup> Training and Education team provides you with the high-level hands-on training for all key aspects of bioprocess development and manufacturing. BioProcess<sup>™</sup> chromatography resins have high chemical stability to allow efficient cleaning/sanitization procedures and validated packing methods established for a wide range of large-scale chromatography columns.

### $\textbf{BioProcess}^{\text{\tiny TM}} \textbf{ chromatography resins for HIC}$

BioProcess<sup>™</sup> resins for HIC are designed for large-scale purification and use in industrial processes. Chromatography resins for HIC purification for new methods or processes are mentioned in Table 5.1; while our legacy resins used in established processes or methods are listed in Table 5.2 for your reference. Figure 3.1 in Chapter 3 also guides you on how to select the resins.

Most of the resins are available in HiTrap<sup>™</sup> and HiScreen<sup>™</sup> formats for the development of efficient and robust purification parameters before the scaling-up process. Some of the resins are also available in high-throughput process development (HTPD) formats, such as PreDictor<sup>™</sup> 96-well plates for fast and easy parallel screening of running conditions. PreDictor<sup>™</sup> RoboColumn<sup>™</sup> miniaturized columns (which you can use with a robotic station) are available for testing of a wide range of parameters such as DBC with small sample consumption. These small-scale formats in the early stages of process development, will save you time, buffer and reduce sample consumption.

Previously, HIC resins based on Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow and Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance were used in purification processes. Today, Capto<sup>™</sup> and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins are more suitable choices. These consist of beads (particles) based on a very rigid, high-flow agarose base matrix. The beads with an optimized pore structure offer outstanding pressure or flow properties. Their high flow rates allow you to increase productivity and large-volume processing.

| Resin                    | Particle size,<br>d <sub>50v</sub> (µm)* | Recommended<br>flow rate | Use       |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|-----------|
| Capto™ Phenyl (high sub) | 75                                       | High                     | Capture   |
| Capto™ Butyl             | 75                                       | High                     | Capture   |
| Capto™ Butyl-S           | 75                                       | High                     | Capture   |
| Capto™ Octyl             | 75                                       | High                     | Capture   |
| Capto™ Phenyl ImpRes     | 40                                       | Medium                   | Polishing |
| Capto™ Butyl ImpRes      | 40                                       | Medium                   | Polishing |
| Capto™ PlasmidSelect     | 40                                       | Medium                   | Polishing |
| SOURCE™ 15PHE            | 15 <sup>†</sup>                          | High                     | Polishing |

### **Table 5.1.** BioProcess<sup>™</sup> HIC chromatography resins for a new method or process development

\* Median particle size of the cumulative volume distribution.

<sup>+</sup> Mean particle diameter (monodisperse size distribution).

**Table 5.2.** Legacy BioProcess<sup>™</sup> HIC chromatography resins used in established processes or methods

| Resin                                       | Particle size,<br>d <sub>50ν</sub> (μm)¹ | Recommended<br>flow rate | Main use  |  |
|---|--|--------------------------|-----------|--|
| Phenyl Sepharose™<br>6 Fast Flow (low sub)  | 90                                       | Medium                   | Capture   |  |
| Phenyl Sepharose™<br>6 Fast Flow (high sub) | 90                                       | Medium                   | Capture   |  |
| Butyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast Flow                | 90                                       | Medium                   | Capture   |  |
| Butyl-S Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow              | 90                                       | Medium                   | Capture   |  |
| Octyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast Flow                | 90                                       | Medium                   | Capture   |  |
| Phenyl Sepharose™<br>High Performance       | 34                                       | Low                      | Polishing |  |
| Butyl Sepharose™<br>High Performance        | 34                                       | Low                      | Polishing |  |

<sup>1</sup> Median particle size of the cumulative volume distribution.



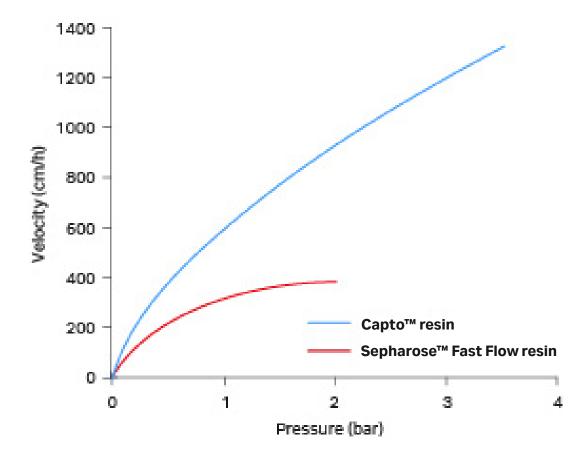
### **Capture purification**

General capture purification is performed using Capto<sup>™</sup> or Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow. When HIC is used as a capture step, the objective is to quickly adsorb the protein of interest from the crude sample and remove critical contaminants such as proteases. Figure 5.1 shows a comparison of properties of Capto<sup>™</sup> with Sepharose<sup>™</sup> chromatography resins. Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow resins are available with a wide range of hydrophobic interaction ligands and are still widely used in biopharmaceutical processes. However, for modern industrial applications, Capto<sup>™</sup> resins are usually the preferred option having benefits such as high rigidity and ability to run at high flow rates, which gives you improved throughput without compromising performance. Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins have been developed in collaboration with biopharmaceutical manufacturers specifically to improve productivity when processing recombinant proteins.

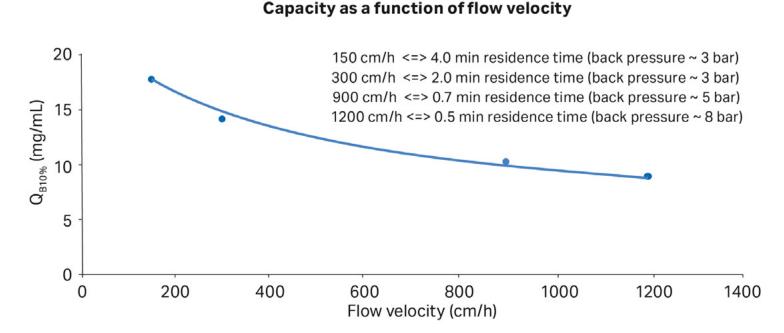
Figure 5.1 compares the pressure-flow performance of a Capto<sup>™</sup> resin with Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow in a representative large-scale situation. The pressure-flow properties of Capto<sup>™</sup> are significantly better than Sepharose<sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow due to the exceptional mechanical stability of the high-flow agarose base matrix.

Capto<sup>™</sup> chromatography resins provide you with a good DBC over a wide range of residence times due to excellent mass transfer properties. When you increase flow velocities, the DBC decreases. However, a three-fold increase in loading flow velocity, from 200 to 600 cm/h, results only in a capacity decrease of 25% as shown in Figure 5.2.

When you optimize upstream processes to yield high titers, the need for better downstream productivity increases. In general, decreasing process times in large-scale chromatographic purifications with Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC resins increases productivity and improves the final process economy.



**Fig 5.1.** Pressure-flow properties of Capto<sup>™</sup> vs Sepharose 6 Fast Flow chromatography resin. Running conditions: BPG 300 column (30 cm i.d), open bed at settled bed height = 20 cm with water at 20°C.



**Fig 5.2**. DBC of Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl chromatography resin as a function of flow velocity with an increase in the loading flow velocity that decreased its capacity and improved productivity. Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl packed in a Tricorn<sup>™</sup> 5/100 GL column. Binding buffer: 1.2 M ammonium sulfate, 100 mM sodium dihydrogen phosphate. Elution buffer: 100 mM sodium dihydrogen phosphate, 10% ethylene glycol.



### **Polishing purification**

The polishing purification is performed using chromatography resins with smaller average bead sizes such as Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins. In contrast to capture purification where a fast, high-capacity step elution is commonly used, a polishing purification will focus on achieving high resolution (resulting in high purity).

Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes and Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes are resins developed for the intermediate and polishing steps in a downstream protein purification process. These resins extend the well-established Capto<sup>™</sup> platform to include high-resolution resin. These resins combine the high-flow characteristics of Capto<sup>™</sup> resin with smaller particle sizes, they deliver both excellent pressure flow properties and resolution. The ability to run at higher flow velocities and higher bed heights increases flexibility in process design and might help to increase your productivity.

Figure 5.3 shows the pressure-flow properties of a high-resolution Capto<sup>™</sup> based resin compared with a legacy Sepharose<sup>™</sup> based resin. Although the bead sizes of the resins are similar, the pressure-flow properties of Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes are significantly improved because of the greater mechanical stability of its high-flow base matrix.

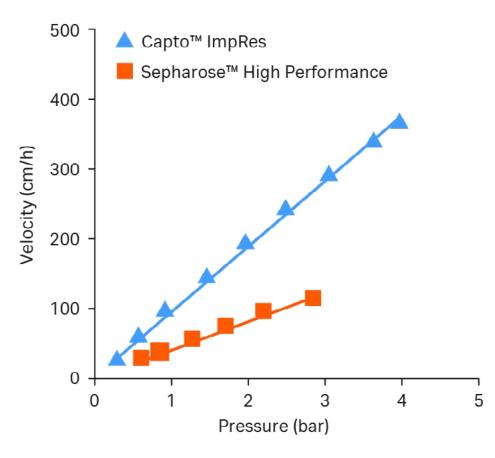
We optimized the Capto<sup>TM</sup> ImpRes resin to bring similar retention times using Capto<sup>TM</sup> Phenyl Impres and Phenyl Sepharose<sup>TM</sup> High Performance for Iysozyme. Likewise, Capto<sup>TM</sup> Butyl ImpRes was optimized to have a similar retention time to Butyl Sepharose<sup>TM</sup> High Performance for  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsinogen. The overlay chromatograms shown in Figure 5.4 show the similarities in retention times for the harmonized model proteins, whereas the differences in retention times for the other two proteins indicate a slight difference in selectivity.

Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes resins provide you with improved performance over Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resins when scaling up due to their good pressure-flow properties, allowing high flow rates. You can use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15 if the required selectivity is not available in a resin of larger particle size.

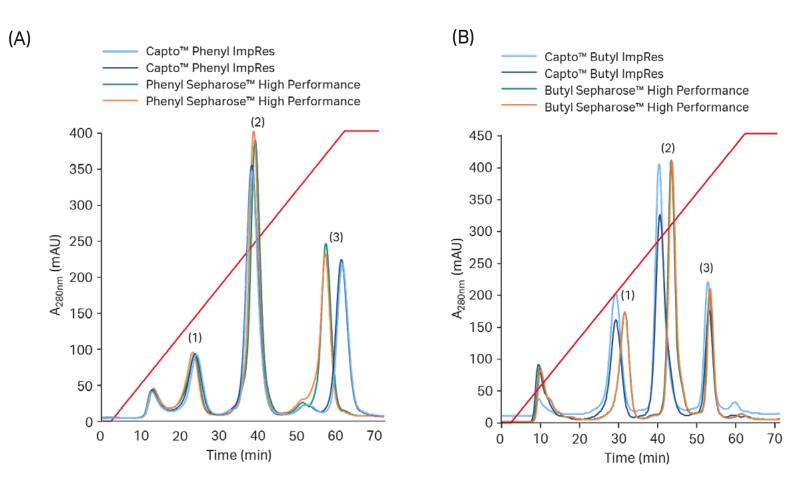
### Prepacked, disposable solutions speed up the downstream process

In addition to a wide range of industrial-scale columns such as AxiChrom<sup>™</sup> columns and bulk resins for purification of proteins, Cytiva offers you the large-scale, disposable ReadyToProcess<sup>™</sup> columns: prepacked, prequalified, and presanitized process chromatography columns available with a range of BioProcess<sup>™</sup> resins — including Capto<sup>™</sup>, Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes, Sepharose<sup>™</sup> Fast Flow, and Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High-Performance product families.

ReadyToProcess<sup>™</sup> columns are available in several different sizes (Fig 5.5) and are designed for the purification of biopharmaceuticals (e.g., proteins and antibodies, vaccines, plasmids, and viruses) for phase I and II clinical studies. Depending on the scale of operations, you can use the columns for manufacturing, as well as preclinical studies. ReadyToProcess<sup>™</sup> columns make column packing, qualification, and sanitization redundant in the purification process, which provides you with substantial time saving.



**Fig 5.3.** Pressure-flow properties of Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes compared to Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance resin. Running conditions: AxiChrom<sup>™</sup> 300 column, bed height with water at 20°C: 20 cm.



**Fig 5.4**. Selectivity test using three model proteins: ribonuclease A (1), lysozyme (2), and α-chymotrypsinogen (3). (A) Comparison of Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes vs Phenyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance (B) Comparison of Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl Impres vs Butyl Sepharose<sup>™</sup> High Performance.



### **Process Characterization Kit**

With the increased molecular diversity and drive for higher productivity, the challenge of getting a deeper understanding of sources of variability and set mitigation strategies grows. A Process Characterization Kit (Fig 5.6) is a tool that provides you with a deeper process understanding. It is available for multiple Capto<sup>™</sup> and Capto<sup>™</sup> ImpRes HIC resins. The kit consists of three bottles of the same chromatography resin. Each bottle has a defined ligand density level (high, average, low), which enables you to study the potential impact that the critical material attribute (CMA) may have on the process outcome.

### **Custom Designed Media (CDM)**

The CDM group customize resins based on your specific industrial process separations when suitable resins are not available from the standard range. The CDM group works in close collaboration with your team to design, manufacture, test, and deliver resins for your specific purification requirements.

### Mechanistic chromatography modeling enabling smarter and faster process development

Mechanistic models use computer simulations to decrease the number of experiments needed during process development. The simulations are based on known physiochemical phenomena involved in chromatography.

Mechanistic modeling is a complement to other process development approaches, such as high-throughput process development (HTPD) and multivariate data analysis (MVDA). Unlike in MVDA, physiochemical effects are also considered in mechanistic modeling and allow interpretation of the model parameter values for increased process understanding.

With mechanistic models, process developers can get a better understanding of both the entire process and the parameters that can influence the process with a smaller number of experiments. That way, process development can become faster, more scientific, and more reliable.

Learn more about mechanistic modeling at cytiva.com/modeling



**Fig 5.5.** ReadyToProcess<sup>™</sup> columns are easily connected to the system and can be disposed of after completed production.



Fig 5.6. The Process Characterization Kit provides deeper process understanding

# ography:

### $\mathbf{06}$ **Reversed phase** chromatography: principles and methods





This chapter reviews the principles and methods of reversed phase chromatography (RPC) for purification and analysis of proteins, peptides, and oligonucleotides.

RPC has become increasingly important for high-resolution separation and analysis of proteins, peptides, and nucleic acids. The technique is a good choice for applications such as peptide mapping or purity checking and is often used for the final polishing of oligonucleotides and peptides.

RPC separates molecules according to differences in their hydrophobicity. In theory, HIC and RPC are closely related techniques since both are based upon interactions between hydrophobic patches on the surface of biomolecules and the hydrophobic surfaces of a chromatography resin. However, in practice, the techniques are very different. The surface of an RPC resin is usually more hydrophobic than that of a HIC resin. This leads to stronger interactions that for successful elution must be reversed using nonpolar, organic solvents such as acetonitrile or methanol. HIC resins offer an alternative way of exploiting the hydrophobic properties of biomolecules by working in a more polar and less denaturing environment.



Proteins are detected at 280 nm or 254 nm, oligonucleotides at 260 nm, and peptides at 215 nm.

RPC offers great flexibility in separation conditions. *Extremely high-resolution* separations can be achieved, resolving components that have only minor differences in hydrophobicity. Separations can be performed using isocratic elution; however, most often, gradient elution is used to minimize the run time.

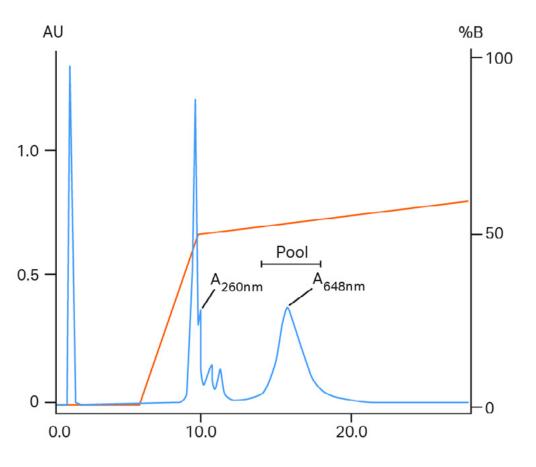
Oligonucleotides are often labeled, for example, with fluorescein, Dye667, or Dye550. For purity checking, an RPC resin with different selectivity would be used under high-resolution separation conditions as shown in Figure 6.1.

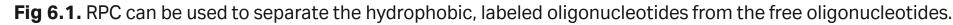
RPC is also used for *desalting and concentrating* the hydrophobic components of a sample. Ionic salts pass through the RPC column while hydrophobic components bind, effectively concentrating them on the column until removal by a simple step elution. RPC is therefore used for sample preparation as well as separations requiring high selectivity. The ability to desalt and use organic solvents makes RPC an ideal technique to couple with mass spectrometry (MS).

RPC is often combined with other chromatography techniques to achieve identification and characterization unknown proteins and peptides. *Multidimensional liquid chromatography* (MDLC) followed by MS is a fast and accurate solution for protein identification and characterization in proteomics, and RPC is one of the key techniques used in the process.

In the presence of nonpolar solvents, complex enzymes and multicomponent proteins are more likely to lose activity than peptides, oligonucleotides, or highly stabilized, cross-linked proteins. The interaction of proteins or polypeptides with a hydrophobic surface in the presence of organic solvents generally leads to some loss of tertiary structure, often giving rise to different conformational state that may interact differently with an RPC resin. However, denaturation and consequent loss of activity can be minimized by returning the biomolecule to conditions that favor the native structure, as demonstrated by the widespread use of RPC for large-scale purification of recombinant and synthetic proteins and peptides, such as insulin and growth hormone. Unless precipitation occurs, denaturation is not a problem when using RPC to purify a protein or peptide for primary structure determination.

| Columns:     | RESOURCE™ RPC 1 mL                                      |
|--------------|---|
| Sample:      | 5'-Cy™5-labeled 20-mer from a 0.2 mmol synthesis        |
| Sample load: | Approx. 0.5 mg  |
| Buffer A:    | 0.1 M triethyl ammonium acetate (TEAA), 5% acetonitrile |
| Buffer B:    | 0.1 M TEAA, 34% acetonitrile                            |
| Gradient:    | 10% to 65% eluent B, 10 CV                              |
| Flow rate:   | 1 mL/min  |
|              |   |









### Terminology

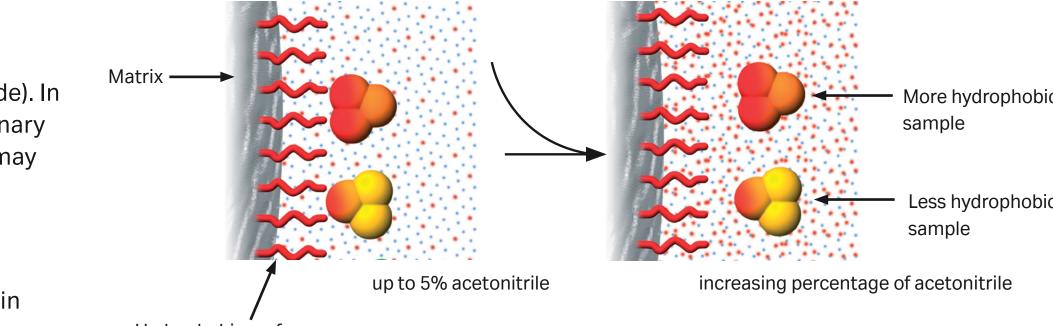
Certain terminology occasionally associated with RPC reflects the developmental history of the technique. The term "reversed phase" derives from "normal phase" chromatography — a "normal phase" technique utilizes a *hydrophilic stationary phase* together with hydrophobic *mobile phases* (using organic solvents such as hexane or methylene chloride). In RPC the *stationary phase* is hydrophobic, hence, water or organic solvent is used in the mobile phase, that is, the stationary phase is more hydrophobic than the mobile phase. RPC resins may be referred to as adsorbents while buffer solutions may be referred to as *mobile phases*.

### **RPC in theory**

The separation of biomolecules by RPC depends on a *reversible hydrophobic interaction* between sample molecules in the buffer and the resin. Initial conditions are primarily aqueous, favoring a high degree of organized water structure surrounding the sample molecule. Frequently, a small percentage of organic modifier (3% to 5%) of acetonitrile is present to achieve a "wetted" surface. As sample binds to the resin, the hydrophobic area exposed to the buffer is minimized buffer.

*Separation* relies on sample molecules existing in an equilibrium between the buffer and the surface of the resin. The distribution of the sample depends on the properties of the resin, the hydrophobicity of the sample, and the composition of the buffer (mobile phase), as illustrated in Figure 6.2. Initially, conditions favor an extreme equilibrium state where essentially 100% of the sample is bound. Since proteins and peptides carry a mix of accessible hydrophilic and hydrophobic amino acids and are rather large, the interaction with the resin has the nature of a multipoint attachment.

To bring about *elution*, the amount of organic solvent is increased so that conditions become more hydrophobic. Binding and elution occur continuously as sample moves through the column. The process of moving through the column is slower for those samples that are more hydrophobic. Consequently, samples are eluted in order of *increasing hydrophobicity*. Increase organic modifier content





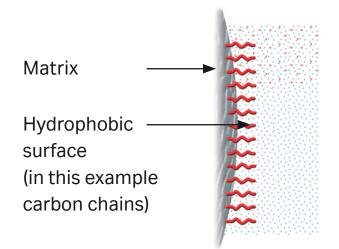
There are two main types of RPC resin, one based on a hydrophilic matrix of *silica beads* covered with a bonded *hydrophobic* phase of carbon chains, typically n-alkyl or aromatic hydrocarbons, and other based on a naked, *hydrophobic polymer* matrix. Highly porous matrices provide a large internal surface area for high binding capacity. Matrices with uniform particle size can be used at higher flow rates.

As with other chromatography techniques, you must pack RPC resin into a column to form a *packed bed*. The bed is then equilibrated with buffer to fill the matrix pores and the space in between the particles. The performance achievable on RPC, especially the resolution, is strongly influenced by the efficiency of the column packing. The use of prepacked columns is therefore highly recommended.

A typical biological sample contains a complex mixture of molecules with a correspondingly diverse range of hydrophobicity. Most biomolecules are sufficiently hydrophobic to bind strongly to RPC resins under aqueous conditions, in the presence of a low concentration of organic modifier, and to elute within a very narrow window of organic modifier concentration. *Gradient elution* is, therefore, the most practical method for RPC separation of complex biological samples. Samples are concentrated during the binding process. The key stages in a separation are shown in Figure 6.3.

The sample is applied under conditions that favor binding, typically using an aqueous solution containing an *ion-pairing agent*, such as trifluoroacetic acid (TFA), to enhance the hydrophobic interaction (*see* Typical eluent protocols for separation of proteins and peptides in this chapter) and a low concentration of *organic modifier* such as 5% acetonitrile. After application, and when all non-bound molecules have passed through (i.e., the UV signal has returned to baseline), conditions are altered to elute the bound sample. Elution begins by increasing the concentration of organic modifiers, such as acetonitrile. Molecules with the lowest hydrophobicity will elute first. By controlling the increase in organic modifiers, molecules are eluted differentially. Those molecules with the highest degree of hydrophobicity will be most strongly retained and eluted last. A wash step removes most of the tightly bound molecules at the end of elution. The column is then re-equilibrated before the next run.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography



### Equilibration

RPC resin equilibrated with start buffer.

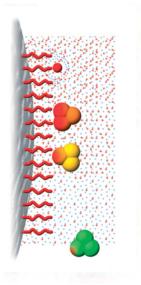
### Sample application

Hydrophobic proteins or peptides Least hydrophobic proteins or peptides

Hydrophobic molecules bind to hydrophobic resin, becoming concentrated on the column. Proteins or peptides with insufficient hydrophobicity elute during or just after sample application.



Binding



### **Elution 1**

Gradient elution begins when UV signal returns to baseline. As % organic modifier increases the least hydrophobic molecules begin to elute first.

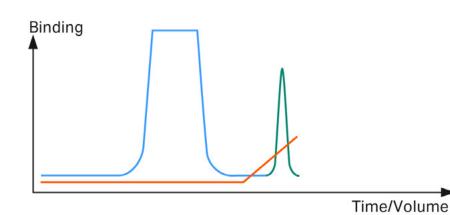
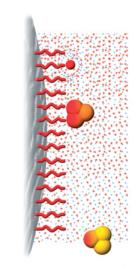
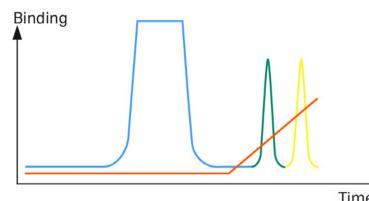


Fig 6.3. Steps involved in an RPC separation using gradient elution.

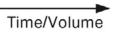


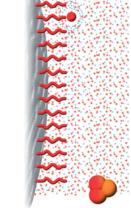
### **Elution 2**

Samples elute in order of increasing hydrophobicity.



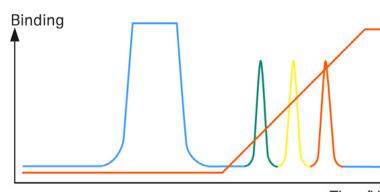
Time/Volume

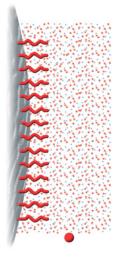




### **Elution 3**

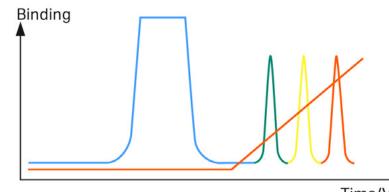
Molecules with the highest degree of hydrophobicity will be most strongly retained and eluted last.





### Wash

Final wash in a high concentration of organic modifier removes any very hydrophobic contaminants before re-equilibration.



Time/Volume





### **Components of an RPC resin**

Factors that may affect final resolution and selectivity include the chemical composition of the matrix, the particle size, the nature of the hydrophobic ligands, ligand surface density (if any), capping chemistry (if used) and pore size.

### The polymer matrix

Synthetic organic polymers, such as beaded polystyrene, provide excellent chemical stability, particularly under strongly acidic or basic conditions (from pH 1.0 to pH 12.0). These stable matrices offer key advantages when separating complex mixtures of protein or peptide: a broad working pH range offers greater control over selectivity (see pH and ion-pairing agents in this chapter); greater chemical stability facilitates any cleaning that may be required after working with biological samples (Fig 6.4). In addition, high physical stability and uniform particles facilitate high flow rates, particularly during cleaning or re-equilibration steps, thereby improving throughput and productivity and minimizing back pressure.

Matrices and ligands used in RPC resins from Cytiva are shown in Table 6.1.

| Product          | Matrix  | Ligand         | Mean particle<br>diameter <sup>1</sup> | pH stability,<br>operational <sup>2</sup> |
|------------------|---|----------------|--|---|
| SOURCE™<br>15RPC | Nonpolar (hydrophobic) polystyrene/divinyl benzene, highly spherical, monodispersed | Matrix surface | 15 µm                                  | 1–12                                      |
| SOURCE™<br>30RPC | As above  | Matrix surface | 30 µm                                  | 1–12                                      |

Table 6.1. Matrices used for RPC resins available from Cytiva

<sup>1</sup>Monodisperse size distribution.

<sup>2</sup>pH range where resin can be operated without significant change in function.

 $\overline{}$ Use 15 µm resin for intermediate purification or polishing of laboratory-scale separations.

Use 15 µm or 30 µm resins for large-scale preparative and process separation, for example, SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC  $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ or SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC. These resins offer lower pressure requirements at high flow rates and have been optimized to ensure high throughput (amount of sample processed within a defined time) while retaining high performance. SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC is good for the polishing stage of industrial processes.

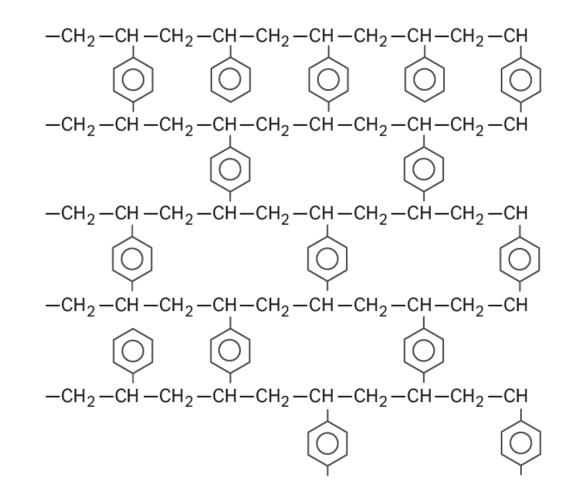


Fig 6.4. Partial structure of a polystyrene-based RPC resin.

# tography

### **Eluents**

### рΗ

Optimum pH is one of the most important parameters to establish. Figure 6.5 shows the significant difference in selectivity that could be achieved by increasing the pH used for the separation of two angiotensins under otherwise identical conditions.

*Polystyrene-based resin* separations can be performed over a broad pH range from 1.0 to 12.0. Since the properties of proteins and peptides can alter significantly at different pH values, a change in pH can give a new selectivity for the sample molecules that contain R-groups with pKa values in the range 3.1 to12.0. Altering pH can also improve control over selectivity and, in some cases, improve solubility and yield of biological activity. Basic peptides often tail during elution from RPC columns at low pH so better resolution can be achieved above pH 8.0. In addition, a wider working pH range facilitates method optimization.

The addition of an ion-pairing agent such as an acid may increase the hydrophobicity of the sample molecules thereby increasing retention and, in some cases, the final selectivity.

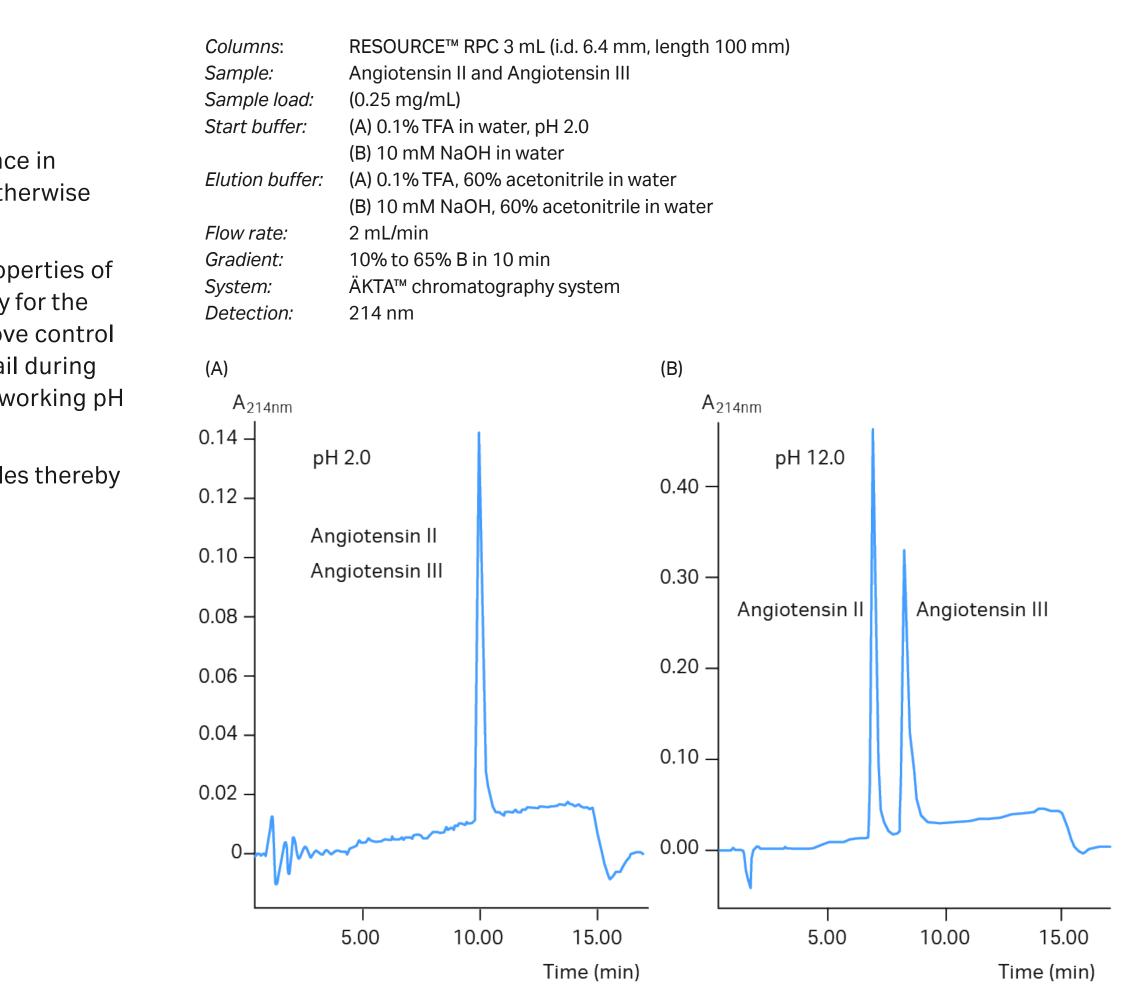


Fig 6.5. Selectivity altered by a change in pH from (A) pH 2.0 to (B) pH 12.0.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### Examples of compounds used to maintain the required pH are given in Table 6.2.

Table 6.2. Examples of compounds used to maintain pH and/or act as ion-pairing agents

| Eluent                         | рН                            | lon-pairing agent  | Concentration       | Commer   |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|---------------------|--|
| Hydrochloric acid              | 2.0                           | No   | 0.01 M              | Volatile.  |
| Sodium hydroxide               | 12.0                          | No   | 0.01 M              | Non-vola   |
| Eluent components that also ac | t as ion-pairing ag           | jents for positively charg   | ed molecules, e.g., | proteins, p                                      |
| Trifluoroacetic acid (TFA)     | 2.0 to 3.0                    | Pairing ion: CF <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>                              | (typically 0.1%)    | Acidic am<br>Ion pairs<br>Low UV a<br>Note: stay |
| Ammonium acetate               | 6.0 to 10.0 and<br>4.3 to 5.3 | Pairing ion: CH <sub>3</sub> COO <sup>-</sup>                              | 10 to 100 mM        | Volatile.  |
| Phosphoric acid                | 2.0 to 3.0                    | Pairing ion: $H_2PO_4^{-}$ ,<br>HPO_4^{2-}, PO <sub>4</sub> <sup>3-</sup>  | 10 to 100 mM        | Less hydr<br>Weak ion<br>Nonvolat                |
| Eluent components that also ac | t as ion-pairing ag           | jents for negatively charg   | ged molecules, e.g. | , oligonucl                                      |
| Triethylamine (TEA)            | 4.0 to 8.0                    | Pairing ion: NH <sup>+</sup> (C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> | 10 to 100 mM        | Suppress<br>negativel<br>ion-pairir<br>compone   |
| Tetramethylammonium chloride   | 4.0 to 12.0                   | Pairing ion: <sup>+</sup> N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>4</sub>                 | 5 to 100 mM         |  |
| Tetrabutylammonium chloride    | 4.0 to 12.0                   | Pairing ion: $^+N(C_4H_9)_4$   | 5 to 100 mM         |  |

### ent

latile. Use only with polystyrene-based media.

### , peptides, and hydrophilic peptides

amino acid side chains become undissociated. rs with amino groups.

absorbance. Volatile.

tay below 0.3% to maintain a stable baseline.

drophobic than TFA .

on-pairing properties.

atile. Adjust to chosen pH with NaOH.

### cleotides

sses negative charges. Used mainly to mask rely charged silanol groups. Also acts as an ring agent with negatively charged sample nents.

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

### lon-pairing agents

A common way to increase the hydrophobicity of charged components, enhance binding to the resin, and so alter retention time, is to add ion-pairing agents to the buffer. These agents bind *via* ionic interactions with charged groups and thereby suppress their influence on overall hydrophobicity (Figure 6.6). Since most proteins and peptides are slightly basic, ion-pairing agents are often acids such as trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) whereas a base such as triethylamine is used for negatively charged molecules.

In some cases, the addition of ion-pairing agents is an absolute requirement for binding to the RPC resin. For example, an ion-pairing agent such as TFA is essential to ensure the binding of hydrophilic peptides. Examples of compounds that act as ion-pairing agents are given in Table 6.2.

The type and concentration of an ion-pairing agent can also affect retention behavior and subsequent selectivity, as shown in Figure 6.7.

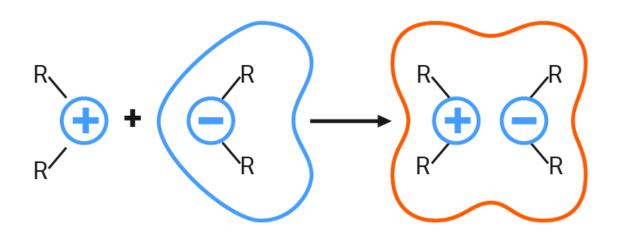


Fig 6.6. Ion-pairing agents alter net hydrophobic properties.

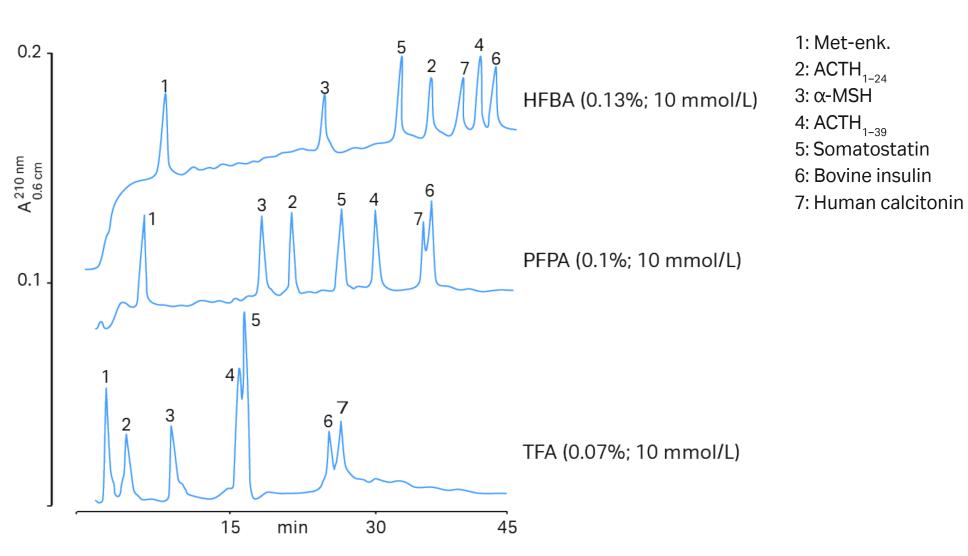


Fig 6.7. Ion-pairing agents significantly affect selectivity and even elution order.

\*Figure taken from Bennett, H. P. J. Manipulation of pH and ion-pairing reagents to maximize the performance of reversed-phase columns, in High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation Analysis, and Conformation (Mant, C.T. and Hodges, R.S. eds). CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 319–326 (1991). Used with permission. © 1991 CRC Press.







### Elution

### **Organic modifiers**

To bring about elution, an organic modifier is added to the eluent to increase the elution strength. The organic modifier must be miscible in water and UV transparent to enable detection of the eluting molecules. The boiling point must be sufficiently low to enable evaporation of the modifier after elution. Table 6.3 reviews the commonly used modifiers in terms of their suitability for protein and peptide separations. Figure 6.8 shows how organic modifiers differ in their elution strength.

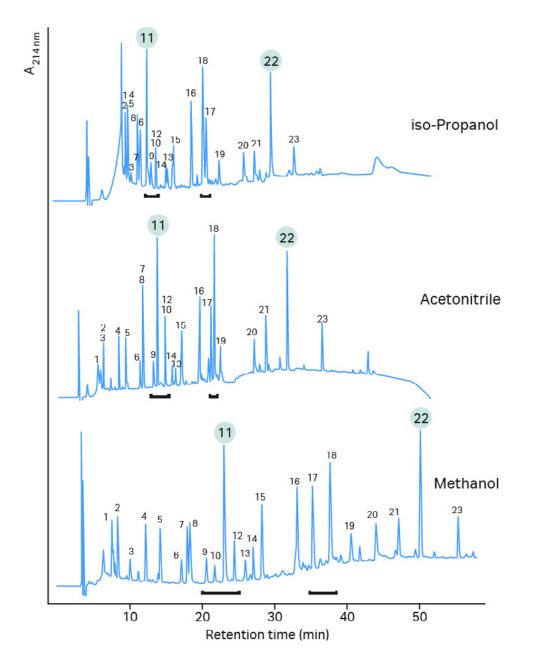


Fig 6.8. Organic modifiers differ in their elution strength rather than in their influence on selectivity when separating proteins and peptides. Figure taken from Aguilar, M.-I. and Hearn, M. T. W. High-resolution reversed-phase high-performance liquid chromatography of peptides and proteins. *Meth. Enzymol.* **270**, 3–26 (1996). Used with permission. © 1996 Academic Press, Inc.

### Organic

Methano Ethanol

2-propan

Acetonit

| ic modifier | Suitability                             | Boiling<br>point (°C) | UV cut-off<br>(nm) | Viscosity<br>(cP at 20°C) | Comment                                     |
|-------------|---|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---|
| าดไ         | Organic small molecules                 | 65                    | 210                | Medium-low: 0.60          | May destabilize protein structure.          |
| I           | Organic small molecules<br>and peptides | 78                    | 205                | Medium-low: 1.20          | May destabilize protein structure.          |
| anol        | Proteins<br>Peptides                    | 82                    | 210                | High: 2.30                | Least effect on protein structure.          |
| itrile      | Organic small molecules                 | 82                    | 190                | Low: 0.36                 | Most effect on protein structure.           |
|             | Proteins<br>Peptides                    |                       |                    |                           | More powerful denaturant than alcohe Toxic. |

Table 6.3. Commonly used organic modifiers. Acetonitrile is the preferred organic modifier used for protein and peptide separations



### Hydroph tography

### **Types of elution**

*Gradient elution* is used most frequently for preparative and analytical, high-resolution separations of proteins and peptides, to minimize separation times. The UV absorbance and theoretical gradient traces shown in Figure 6.9 represents the elution of sample components and the increase in concentration of organic modifier in the eluent (%B) during gradient elution.

Although RPC separations are frequently described in terms of flow (mL/min or cm/h, see Appendix 4) and time (min), expressing eluent volumes as CV to describe a separation profile, for example, 5 CV = 5 mL for a column with a 1 mL bed volume, greatly facilitates method development and the transfer of methods to columns of different dimensions when scaling up.

For high-resolution analysis a broad gradient is used to bind as many components as possible and then elute them differentially to obtain a comprehensive profile.

For *preparative* applications gradient elution conditions can be optimized to separate a target molecule from all contaminants.

Step elution is used most typically for desalting (buffer exchange). Here you can use a low-resolution separation to separate hydrophobic components from hydrophilic contaminants and salts.

Under *isocratic elution*, separation is brought about using only one eluent. Isocratic elution is used mainly for highresolution analysis of small organic molecules but can occasionally be used to advantage as part of an optimized separation, for example, to maximize resolution in a region where contaminants elute very closely to a target molecule during a preparative application.

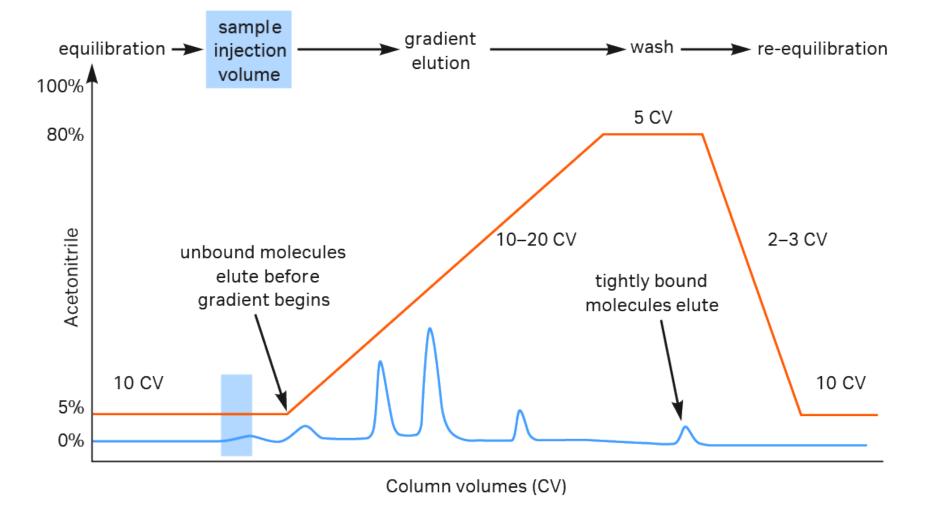


Fig 6.9. Typical high-resolution, RPC separation using gradient elution.



107

Isocratic elution is also used for desalting a sample. Desalting by RPC is used primarily for sample preparation before a chromatographic separation, for example, to remove salts before an IEX separation or before online or offline analysis by MS. Large volumes of sample can be applied (limited only by the binding capacity of the resin). Hydrophobic molecules bind as hydrophilic molecules, including salts, pass through. The bound, concentrated molecules are then eluted using a small volume of a hydrophobic eluent, typically containing acetonitrile. This volatile solvent can then be removed by evaporation and the residue re-dissolved in a new buffer. Size exclusion chromatography (SEC) is also used for desalting, separating low molecular weight contaminants and salts from higher molecular weight biomolecules (see Appendix 1). However, although SEC is a simple, gentle technique, it has the disadvantages that the volume of sample that can be applied to a column is limited and that samples are diluted. Figure 6.10 shows a theoretical comparison between SEC and RPC used for desalting.

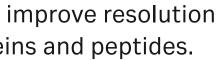
### **Binding capacity**

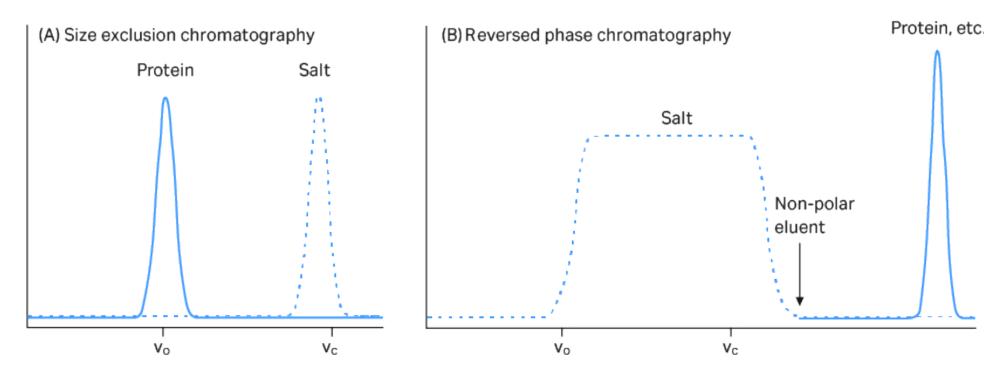
The *available binding capacity* of an RPC resin is a quantitative measurement of its ability to bind sample components under defined static conditions. If the defined conditions include the flow rate at which the resin was operated, the amount bound is referred to as the *dynamic binding capacity*. Porosity is a crucial factor in determining the binding capacity. The entire hydrophobic surface of macroporous resin, is available for binding of sample components, but high molecular weight components may be excluded from resin of smaller pore size and only a small fraction of the hydrophobic surface will be used. High porosity with an open pore structure (e.g., SOURCE™ RPC resin) is therefore an advantage when separating large molecules such as proteins and peptides. The pores must be large enough to allow all the molecules of interest to enter freely to achieve a high binding capacity. Capacity values are also influenced by other properties such as the nature of the sample components, the eluent used during binding, temperature, pH etc.

Binding capacities are supplied under *Purification options* with each resin later in this chapter. However, these values can be used only as guides. Optimal selectivity in relation to the quantity of sample molecules applied to a column must be determined practically.

### **RPC in practice**

This section covers detailed practical aspects of an RPC separation, together with hints and tips to improve resolution and overall performance. Our advice focuses primarily on separation of biomolecules such as proteins and peptides. The steps for a typical RPC separation are summarized in Figure 6.11.







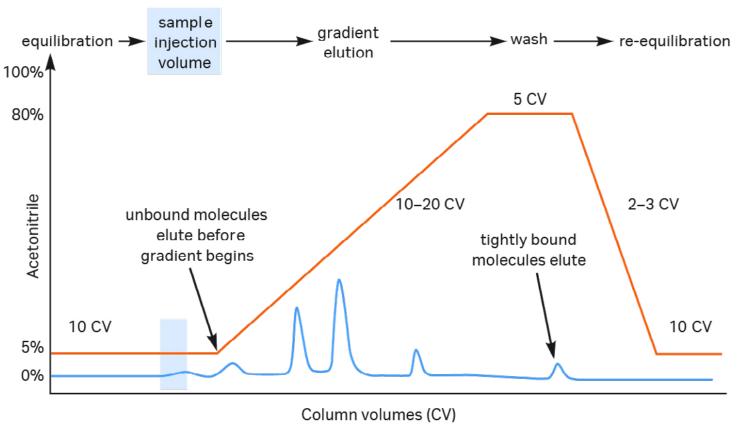


Fig 6.11. Typical RPC separation using gradient elution.



As discussed under the theoretical section, a successful RPC separation is influenced by many parameters and will always need to be optimized to meet the requirements for the application. Steps toward selecting and optimizing resins and conditions for an RPC separation of biomolecules are given here in order of priority:

- 1. Select a resin that provides best resolution under the simplest starting conditions, for example, TFA and acetonitrile in the eluent.
- 2. Scout for the pH that provides good resolution.
- 3. If necessary, scout for a suitable ion-pairing agent to improve selectivity.
- 4. Optimize the gradient elution to maximize selectivity (the gradient slope only influences the distance between peaks, it will not change their elution order). Select the steepest gradient (lowest gradient volume) that provides acceptable results.
- 5. Scout for the highest flow rate that gives an acceptable separation.

# **Resin and column selection**

Choosing the correct RPC resin and column dimensions is critical for a successful separation and should be based on the goal of the application and the nature of the sample components.

# Sample components: hydrophobicity

The selection of an RPC resin in relation to the hydrophobicity of the sample components must be made empirically. Unlike other chromatographic techniques, it is almost impossible to predict the retention of biomolecules in RPC. Important parameters affecting retention of a peptide appear to be a combination of the amino acid sequence of the peptide together with any secondary structure, such as  $\alpha$ -helices and  $\beta$ -pleated sheets. The situation for proteins is further complicated by their tertiary structure.



Select less hydrophobic resins when separating components that are known to be highly hydrophobic to facilitate elution. Samples that bind strongly to a resin will be more easily eluted from a less hydrophobic resin.

# tography

# **Goal of separation**

Applications involving fractionation of multi-component samples, such as peptide mapping, require extremely high resolution. Preparative reversed phase applications, such as the purification of synthetic peptides, are more concerned with throughput, and resolution might be traded off against speed and capacity. However, if used in the final polishing step, the resolution will be crucial.

Resolution in reversed phase chromatography depends on the efficiency of the column and the selectivity.

## Scale of separation

Use 15 µm or 30 µm resins for large-scale preparative and process separation, for example, SOURCE™ 15RPC  $\overline{}$ or SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC. These resins offer lower pressure requirements at high flow rates and have been optimized to ensure high throughput (amount of sample processed within a defined time) while retaining high performance. SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30 RPC is good for the polishing stage of industrial processes.

Note that the nature of RPC separations may cause slight changes in selectivity when changing particle size.

## **Column length**

Increasing column length may improve resolution when working with large sample volumes.

Longer column lengths may improve resolution of a complex peptide mixture, for example, the resolution of peptides from a peptide digest.

Longer column lengths may improve resolution of closely related peptides or proteins if a shallow gradient of organic modifier is used.

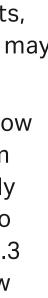
# **Eluent selection and preparation**

Use the highest purity, HPLC grade solvents, acids, bases, salts, ion-pairing agents, and water when- ever possible. Chemical purity is important since contaminants may produce unwanted extra peaks, ghost peaks, or contaminate the final product.

All components must be transparent to UV below 220 nm and soluble under the low polarity conditions used during a separation. Although proteins absorb at 280 nm and synthetic oligonucleotides at 250 to 260 nm, detection below 220 nm (usually at 215 nm) is necessary when separating short peptides that lack aromatic amino acid residues such as Trp and Tyr. Components recommended in Tables 6.2 and 6.3 have been chosen based on providing optimal separation in combination with low background absorbance.

 $\left( \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{F} \end{array} \right)$ 

When possible, use volatile components. These can be removed by evaporation from the eluted fractions, along with the organic modifier. Non-volatile salts or acids must be removed by an additional desalting step.





# pH and ion-pairing agents

Table 6.2 shows the most used acids and bases for setting the pH of elution buffer and shows their influence as ionpairing agents. Since the net charge of proteins and peptides varies with pH, their net hydrophobicity also varies with pH. Elution buffer pH is therefore an important influence on elution order and final selectivity.



 $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ 

Որ

For samples with unknown properties, start with the most used strong acid that also acts as an ion-pairing agent: 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid as eluent A (reduce to 0.065% if baseline stability needs to be improved).

Add ion-pairing agents at concentrations recommended in Table 6.2, to enhance binding of hydrophobic components to the resin. Note that other ion-pairing agents are not combined with TFA.

For samples with known specific properties, refer to Table 6.2.

The presence of ion-pairing agents can affect UV absorbance, and changes may be seen as the concentration of organic modifier changes. This may result in ascending or descending baselines during gradient elution. Always run a blank gradient to determine the effect of any additives prior to performing a separation. Adjust the concentration if necessary (refer to Baseline drift: balancing eluents in this chapter). Note that changing the concentration can change the degree of ionization of sample components and alter their behavior during separation.

# **Organic modifiers**

For samples with unknown properties, start with the most used organic modifier, acetonitrile.

With a cut-off below 210 nm, acetonitrile has a much lower background absorbance than other common solvents at these low wavelengths, providing better baseline stability as the content of organic modifier is varied during a separation and ensuring optimum detection sensitivity.



5

Ion-pairing agents may need to be added (see pH and ion-pairing agents above in this chapter).

Use 2-propanol when requiring stronger eluting properties or to maintain sample stability. Note that the higher viscosity results in lower column efficiency and increased back pressure.



If the elution profile is still unsatisfactory, refer to Table 6.3, for a review of other organic modifiers. Note that changing the organic modifier can affect retention time. Changes in the elution order of proteins are likely to be a result of denaturation that significantly alters their hydrophobicity.

# ography:

# **Typical eluent protocols for separation of proteins and peptides**

This section presents some of the more commonly used eluent protocols. Most protocols contain 5% or less of organic modifier in eluent A and 80% or less of organic modifier in eluent B. Note that concentrations above 80% may affect PEEK tubing which is often present in high performance chromatography systems. To remove common contaminants like precipitated proteins, use this procedure:

## **Polymer-based resin**

Since polymer-based resin can be used over a wider pH range and without concerns over mixed-mode retention and the need to suppress the ionic interactions of silanol groups, a wider range of eluent protocols can be used.

### For samples with unknown properties or known to require acidic conditions

Buffer A: 0.065% TFA in 2% acetonitrile Buffer B: 0.050% TFA in 80% acetonitrile

### For samples known to require basic conditions

Buffer A: 0.125% ammonium solution pH 10 in 2% acetonitrile Buffer B: 80% acetonitrile in buffer A

### **Other systems**

| Buffer A: pH 2.1  | 0.1% formic acid, 2% acetonitrile          |
|-------------------|--|
| pH 2.0            | 0.1% acetic acid, 2% acetonitrile          |
| pH 2.0            | 0.1% TFA, 2% acetonitrile                  |
| pH 4.5            | 10 mM sodium acetate, 2% acetonitrile      |
| pH 7.0            | 10 mM potassium phosphate, 2% acetonitrile |
| рН 9.0            | 10 mM Tris-HCI, 2% acetonitrile in buffer  |
| pH 12.0           | 10 mM NaOH, 2% acetonitrile in buffer      |
| Buffer B: 70% ace | etonitrile in buffer A                     |

Although most eluents contain strong acids and organic solvents that give little buffering capacity, adequate buffering capacity should be maintained when working closer to physiological conditions.

# Preparation

- 1. Filter eluents that have had solids added, using a 0.22 µm filter. This prevents particles from clogging the column.
- 2. Measure volumes of organic solvent and aqueous solutions separately and then mix (this eliminates volume variations that occur when mixing organic and aqueous phases directly).
- 3. Degas the solutions in a sonication bath (< 15 min), under vacuum with magnetic stirring (< 5 min) or by purging by helium (< 5 min). This prevents bubble formation during elution. Be careful to keep the degassing time as low as possible to prevent evaporation of the organic solvent.
- 4. Add volatile ion-pairing agents.

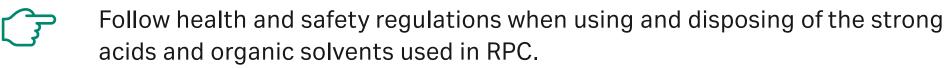


Use freshly prepared eluents.

Always use a flow restrictor (compatible with an appropriate pressure range) connected after the detector of a chromatography system to prevent the accumulation of air in the detector.



If you must store eluents, the containers must be sealed to avoid changes in composition caused by evaporation and, preferably, kept at 4°C. Do not store aqueous solutions at neutral pH for more than 2 to 3 d due to the risk of microbial growth. To reduce the risk of bubble formation, allow cold solutions to reach running temperature and degas them before use.











# **Column and resin preparation**

RPC columns should be "conditioned" for first-time use, after long-term storage or when buffer conditions changed significantly. The eluents used for conditioning the column should be the same as those used in the subsequent separation. The procedure for conditioning RPC columns is as follows:

- 1. Wash the column with approximately 3 CV of buffer B at a low to moderate flow rate appropriate for the column.
- 2. Run a 2 to 3 CV linear gradient from 100% buffer B to 100% buffer A at the same flow rate as in step 1.
- 3. Equilibrate the column with 10 CV of buffer A. Continue equilibration until all monitor signals are stable.

If eluents are changed, perform a blank run to check for artifacts that may appear due to UV absorbing impurities. Return to 100% buffer A and equilibrate to a stable baseline prior to sample injection.

# **Sample preparation**

Sample preparation is critical especially for high-resolution separations. Simple steps to clarify the sample will avoid the risk of blockage, reduce the need for stringent washing procedures, and avoid deterioration in column performance and increases in back pressure. For efficient binding, dissolve the sample in the initial buffer or a solution with a lower content of organic modifier.



Samples must be clear and free from particulate matter. Desalt very crude samples using SEC (Appendix 1) or an RPC column packed with larger particles to remove contaminants that may foul a high-resolution RPC column.

- 1. Dissolve the sample in buffer A.
- 2. Centrifuge samples at 10 000  $\times$  g for 10 min or filter through a 0.22 or 0.45  $\mu$ m sterile filter. Use a solvent-resistant filter if there is an organic modifier in buffer A. Apply to the column as soon as possible to avoid any side reactions such as oxidation.

# **Sample solubility**

It is important to maintain sample solubility throughout the loading process and during separation to avoid precipitation on the column.



If back pressure increases significantly this may be a sign that sample is precipitating on the column. Recheck sample solubility in buffer A. A low percentage of organic modifier in buffer A, for example, 5% acetonitrile, helps to overcome solubility problems without disrupting the separation.



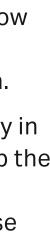
If there are problems with solubility when the sample is dissolved directly in buffer A, add formic acid or acetic acid (0.1%) to increase solubility. Keep the sample volume small compared to the column volume to avoid any interference by these additives. If large sample volumes are applied these additives will be seen as additional peaks eluting in the void volume after injection.



(III)

Ensure that sample is at the same temperature as solutions, columns, and chromatographic equipment.

Do not overload the column as this can also cause precipitation.



ography

# **Concentration and viscosity**

Viscosity varies with temperature and will increase as the percentage of organic modifier increases. Differences in composition between the sample and buffer A will be seen as a disturbance in the UV baseline shortly after injection.

# Sample load

Sample load (mass) is of greater significance than sample volume since RPC is a binding technique. The amount of sample that can be applied to a column depends on the binding capacity of the resin and the degree of resolution required.

Sample load influences resolution since the width of the peaks is directly related to the amount of substance present. To achieve satisfactory resolution, the total amount of sample bound should be less than the total binding capacity of the packed column.



Apply 20% to 25% of the total binding capacity of the column for optimal resolution with gradient elution. Sample loads can be increased if resolution is satisfactory.

Capacity may decrease with increasing flow rates so that a balance must be found between achieving the maximum DBC and a fast separation especially when applying large sample volumes.

# Sample volume

As a binding technique, RPC is independent of sample volume. You can apply large volumes of diluted sample to concentrate and separate the sample.

# Temperature

Maintain sample, eluents, columns, and chromatography equipment at the same, constant temperature throughout a separation to ensure reproducible results. Temperature will affect sample and buffer viscosity and may influence resolution. An increase or decrease in temperature can improve resolution. Increasing temperature is most effective in improving resolution when separating low molecular weight samples.

# Gradient, isocratic or step elution

For high-resolution RPC separations, you can use a stepwise or continuous gradient to elute components. The gradient shape and volume must be empirically determined for each separation. Gradient slopes are described as changes in percent buffer B per unit time (Buffer B [%]/min) or per unit volume (B [%]/mL).

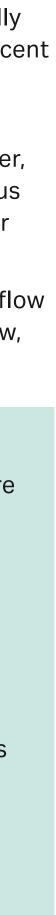
In any gradient elution, the concentration of organic modifier is lower in buffer A than in buffer B and, regardless of the absolute change in percent organic modifier, the gradient always proceeds from a relatively hydrophilic condition (high aqueous content, low concentration of organic modifier) to a hydrophobic condition (lower aqueous content, higher concentration of organic modifier).

Gradients can be measured in volume mode or time mode. Note that changes in flow (at constant gradient slope) have little effect on a separation but, at constant flow, gradient slope has a significant effect.

- 1. Begin with a broad linear gradient to determine whether the molecule(s) of interest will bind and elute or how well the components of a complex mixture will be separated.
- 2. Run a blank gradient before sample injection to detect any baseline disturbances coming from the column or impurities/components in the buffer. Run from 5% buffer B to 80% B over 10 to 20 CV.
- 3. Adjust buffer conditions if the baseline drift is too great (see Baseline drift: balancing eluents in this chapter).



- Check buffer components and cleanliness of column if there are signs of contamination (see Ghosting in the Troubleshooting section at the end of this chapter).
- 4. When a satisfactory baseline has been achieved, repeat the run, this time injecting sample.





# **Optimization**

After the initial gradient run, separation conditions can be altered to improve selectivity and resolution. Key parameters that can be altered are listed in Table 6.4.

**Table 6.4.** Parameters to consider during optimization

| Effect                           | Parameter   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Alter selectivity                | Change organic modifier (elution power: iso-propanol> acetonitrile>ethanol>methanol)  |
| Alter selectivity/retention time | Change pH   |
| Alter selectivity                | Change ion-pairing agent  |
| Improve resolution               | Use a shallower gradient (i.e., increase gradient volume or<br>time or use a segmented gradient).<br>Very effective for protein separations since retention times<br>are very sensitive to small changes in elution buffer. |
| Improve resolution               | Decrease flow rate  |
| Improve resolution               | Alter temperature   |
|                                  |   |

The final gradient shape can be a combination of linear gradients and isocratic steps. The choice of gradient slope will depend on how closely contaminants elute around a target molecule or how well peaks are resolved.



Shallow gradients with short columns are generally optimal for high molecular weight biomolecules.

Step gradients (i.e., a series of isocratic elution at different percent buffer B) are useful for applications such as desalting and when performing process-scale applications providing the desired resolution can be obtained.

### **Flow rate**

Flow rate is an important factor for resolution of small molecules, including small peptides and protein digests. Using an optimal flow rate is also important in isocratic experiments to keep zone broadening to a minimum. Flow rate is less important during a gradient elution if the most suitable particle size has been selected.







# Wash and re-equilibration



Choose the highest flow rate to achieve maximum resolution over the shortest time.

Apply samples directly to the column at a flow rate suitable to ensure optimal time for binding.

Use a chromatography system capable of producing accurate gradients. The choice of equipment depends largely on the sample volume, the size and type of column and the type of resin. When programming a chromatography system in time mode, remember that changes in flow rate will affect gradient slope and, therefore, resolution.

Reduce flow rate to reduce back pressure but remember that this will lengthen the run time and the separation may need to be re-optimized.

For large-scale preparative RPC, the flow rate used during sample loading is significant since this will influence the DBC (see Binding capacity in this chapter).

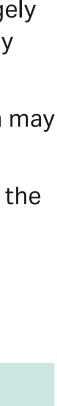
The optimal flow rate for sample application must be determined empirically.

1. Wash the column with at least 5 CV of 100% buffer B to remove any bound molecules.

2. Apply a decreasing gradient over 2 to 3 CV from 100% buffer B to 0% buffer A to avoid damaging the column by a sudden change in composition.

3. Re-equilibrate the column using at least 10 CV of buffer A.

Occasionally the hydrophobic interaction is so strong that harsher organic solvents may be required to elute all bound material. Since the separation of proteins by RPC is a balance between elution and the risk of denaturation and loss of biological activity, HIC should be considered as a more suitable technique if this occurs. Peptides contain a low degree of tertiary structure and are therefore more stable in organic solvents.





# **Troubleshooting**

# Ghosting

Poor-quality buffer components can cause a phenomenon referred to as "ghosting". Trace levels of organic impurities bind to the resin, concentrating during equilibration and sample application. When elution begins, these contaminants appear in the chromatogram as unknown, or "ghost" peaks. The size of a ghost peak will usually depend on the equilibration time and the level of organic impurities in the buffer.

Ghosting may also be caused by incomplete elution of molecules in a previous run. Run a blank gradient with no sample as a check, especially if subsequent runs are to be performed with high-sensitivity detection.

# **Baseline drift: balancing eluents**

During a typical run the baseline can progressively increase or decrease in a linear fashion as the proportion of buffer B increases. This phenomenon may originate from an ion-pairing agent (or strong acid component) or an organic modifier that absorbs significantly at the detection wavelength. The background absorbance caused by buffer components is corrected for during column equilibration. As the proportion of organic part increases so the absorbance properties change.

 $\overline{}$ 

Compensate for a drifting baseline by using different concentrations of UV-absorbing ion-pairing agents (or buffer acids) in buffer A and B and thereby balancing the "concentrations" with respect to UV-absorption properties to give a straight baseline. Because of batch-to-batch variations in the absorption properties of buffer components and other differences between the conditions in different runs, it is not practical to give specific recommendations.

The following example can assist to illustrate the principle: gradients from TFA in water to TFA in acetonitrile will usually require that the concentration of TFA in acetonitrile is 10% to 30% lower than in water. The balanced concentrations of UV-absorbing components should then be determined empirically. The difference in concentration of ion-pairing agent between the two eluents is generally not large enough to adversely affect the separation. A typical example would be to use 0.065% TFA in buffer A and 0.05% TFA in buffer B. Table 6.5 provides troubleshooting under various conditions in using RPC.

# Hydrophob ography

**Table 6 5** Troubleshooting conditions in handling RPC

| Situation   | Possible cause   | Remedy   |
|---|--|--|
| Reduced or no flow through column.                              | Outlet closed or pumps not working.  | Open outlet. Check pumps for signs of the leakage.   |
|   | Blocked filter, end-piece, tubing or precolumn.                                      | Remove and clean or replace if possible. Always filter samples and eluents before use.   |
| Reduced flow through the column. Back pressure increases        | Precipitation in the column.   | Follow cleaning procedures. Adjust eluents to maintain sample solubility.  |
| during a run or during successive runs.                         | Bed is compressed.   | Replace column.  |
| Back pressure increases during a run or during successive runs. | Turbid sample applied.   | Adjust eluents to improve sample solubility e.g., increase organic modifier or adjust pH.  |
| Sample does not elute during gradient elution.                  | pH-caused precipitation.   | Adjust pH to avoid precipitation.  |
|   | Final concentration of organic modifier too low.                                     | Increase concentration of organic modifier in gradient or in eluent B.   |
|   | Eluting power of organic modifier too weak.  | Change to a less hydrophobic RPC resin or change organic modifier.   |
| Sample elutes before gradient elution begins.                   | Sample components not sufficiently hydrophobic.                                      | Add or increase concentration of ion pairing agent or use an organic modifier with less eluting power or change to a more hydrophobic RPC resin. |
|   | pH unsuitable.   | Adjust pH to enhance binding.  |
|   | Impurities bound to the column.  | Clean and re-equilibrate column.   |
|   | Concentration of organic modifier in initial eluent too high.                        | Decrease organic modifier concentration.   |
|   | Column not equilibrated properly.  | Re-equilibrate column.   |
| Leading or very rounded peaks in chromatogram.                  | Column overloaded.   | Decrease sample load and repeat.   |
|   | Column contaminated.   | Clean using recommended procedures.  |
| Peaks are tailing.  | Column poorly packed.  | Repack or use a prepacked column.  |
|   | Sample has precipitated on column.   | Clean column, replace top filter or precolumn if possible.   |
| Peaks are tailing or have a leading edge.                       | Column packing compressed.   | Check column efficiency (see Appendix 2).<br>Repack using a lower flow rate. Use prepacked columns.  |
| Peaks too small.  | Sample absorbs light.  | If appropriate, check absorbance range on monitor. If satisfactory, use a different wavelength. Check<br>UV cutoffs of buffer components.        |
|   | Different assay conditions have been used before and after the chromatographic step. | Use same assay conditions for all assays.  |
|   | Excessive peak broadening  | Check column efficiency (see Appendix 2). Repack if necessary. Replace column if necessary.  |



Hydrophobi ō inte 2 Ct O 5 с С nd rev Ð ស ed phase chrom ıatography

| Situation   | Possible cause  | Remedy  |
|---|---|---|
| Resolution less than expected.                          | Large mixing spaces at top of or after column.                                      | Top up surface of resin if possible. Reduce all post-CV.  |
|   | Suboptimal elution conditions (e.g.,) gradient too steep, flow rate too high.       | Alter elution conditions: use shallower or plateau gradient, reduce flow rate.  |
|   | Column poorly packed.   | Check column efficiency (see Appendix 2). Repack if possible. Use prepacked columns.  |
|   | Column overloaded.  | Clean and re-equilibrate column. Decrease sample load.  |
|   | Lipoproteins or protein aggregates have precipitated.                               | Clean and re-equilibrate column. Adjust elution buffer to maintain solubility.  |
|   | Column aging.   | Adjust elution buffer to improve ion suppression. Replace column if necessary.  |
|   | Sample not filtered properly.   | Clean the column, filter the sample and repeat.   |
|   | Poor selectivity.   | Add or adjust ion-pairing agent. Change to another resin.   |
| Samples do not bind or elute as expected.               | Sample has not been filtered.   | Prepare fresh samples.  |
|   | Column equilibration incomplete.  | Repeat or prolong the equilibration step until baseline is stable.  |
|   | Lipoproteins or protein aggregates have precipitated.                               | Clean and re-equilibrate column.  |
|   | Incorrect buffer conditions (possibly due to evaporation).                          | Check conditions required. Prepare fresh solutions.   |
| Resin/beads appears in buffer.                          | Column operated at too high pressure.   | Do not exceed recommended operating pressure for resin or column.   |
| Low recovery of activity, but normal recovery of mass.  | Sample may be denatured or inactive in the buffer.                                  | Determine the pH and organic solvent stability of the sample. Reduce separation time to limit exposu<br>to organic conditions or change to a less powerful organic modifier or use a less hydrophobic RPC res |
|   | Enzyme separated from co-factor or similar.   | Test by pooling aliquots from the fractions and repeating the assay.  |
| Sample yield lower than expected.                       | Sample may have been degraded by proteases or nucleases.                            | Add inhibitors or minimize separation time.   |
|   | Absorption to filter during sample preparation.                                     | Use another type of filter.   |
|   | Sample precipitated.  | Decrease sample load or change buffer conditions.   |
|   | Basic sample components bound to resin by ionic interaction.                        | Increase pH or add/adjust ion-pairing agent concentration.  |
| More activity recovered than was applied to the column. | Different assay conditions have been used before and after the chromatography step. | Use same assay conditions for all assays.   |
|   | Removal of inhibitors during separation.  |   |
|   |   |   |



Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

| Situation   | Possible cause  | Remedy  |
|---|---|---|
| Air bubbles in the bed.   | Eluents not properly degassed.                                  | Degas eluents thoroughly.   |
|   | Column packed or stored at cool temperature and then warmed up. | Remove small bubbles by passing degassed buffer through the column. Take special care if eluents are used after storage in a fridge or cold-room. Do not allow column to warm up due to sunshine or heating system. Repack column, if possible. |
| Negative peaks.   | Refractive index effects.                                       | Ensure sample is dissolved in initial buffer.   |
| Unexpected peaks or spikes in chromatogram.<br>Peaks appear on blank gradients. | Impurities in the buffer.                                       | Use high-quality HPLC grade reagents  |
| Peaks appear on blank gradients.  | Incomplete elution of previous sample.                          | Wash the column according to recommended methods.   |
| Spikes in chromatogram.   | Air bubble trapped in UV flow cell.                             | Always use degassed eluents.  |
|   |   | Ensure the flow restrictor has an appropriate pressure range. Rinse the chromatography system with 100% methanol.   |
| UV baseline rises with gradient.  | Buffer A and B absorb differently at the same wavelength.       | Balance elution buffer components or use a different wavelength.  |
|   | Impurities in the elution buffer.                               | Use high-quality HPLC grade reagents.   |
| Excessive baseline noise.   | UV absorption by components in elution buffer.                  | Monitor at different wavelength or reduce concentration of UV absorbing component (usually the ion-pairing agent) or change organic modifier if this is absorbing.  |



# **SOURCE™** chromatography resins: rapid separation with high resolution and easy scale-up

Use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC resins for purification and analysis of proteins, peptides, and oligonucleotides.  $\sim$ 

Use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC as an alternative to silica-based matrices when separations must be performed above pH 8.0 or when requiring different selectivity or higher capacity.

Use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC for polishing stages of industrial processes requiring high flow rate and low back pressure.

Use SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC for polishing steps in laboratory or large-scale applications that require highest resolution and fast separation (flows up to 1800 cm/h).

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins are based on a matrix made from monodispersed, rigid, polystyrene/divinyl benzene (Fig 6.11). The resins demonstrate extreme chemical and physical stability and, unlike silica-based resins, can be used at extremes of pH. A range of particle sizes (30 or 15 µm) enables the use of SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC from large-scale purification through to high-resolution analysis. The uniformity and stability of SOURCE<sup>™</sup> particles ensure high flow rates at low backpressure. Such high flow rates are useful for speeding up cleaning and re-equilibration steps. Flow rates are more likely to be limited based on the equipment available and the eluents used rather than the physical properties of the resin.

# **Resin characteristics**

 $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ 

لى ا

| Product                   | Temperature stability<br>for regular use | pH stability   | Mean particle<br>diameter <sup>3</sup> |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| SOURCE™ 15RPC             | 4°C to 40°C                              | Operational <sup>1</sup> : 1 to 12<br>CIP <sup>2</sup> : 1 to 14 | 15 µm                                  |
| SOURCE <sup>™</sup> 30RPC | 4°C to 40°C                              | Operational <sup>1</sup> : 1 to 12<br>CIP <sup>2</sup> : 1 to 14 | 30 µm                                  |

Table 6.6. Resin characteristics for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC resins

<sup>1</sup> pH range where resin can be operated without significant change in function.

<sup>2</sup> pH range where resin can be subjected to cleaning- or sanitization-in-place. without significant change in function.

<sup>3</sup> Mean particle diameter (monodisperse size distribution).

All ranges are estimates based on the experience and knowledge within Cytiva.

Separation methods can be easily scaled up from prepacked columns such as RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> and SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC ST 4.6/100 (Table 6.6) through to large-scale columns such as FineLINE<sup>™</sup>.

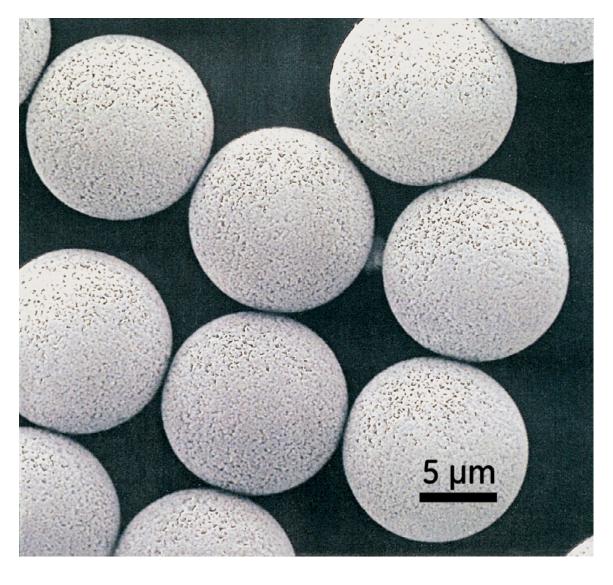


Fig 6.11. Scanning electron micrograph of SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC particles shows the uniform size distribution.

# tography

# **Purification options**

Table 6.7. RPC resins based on SOURCE<sup>™</sup> matrices are available in prepacked columns and as resin lab packs

| Product                             | DBC/mL resin*  | Recommended operating flow <sup>†</sup> | Maximum<br>operating flow <sup>†</sup> | Maxim<br>back p<br>(MPa/p |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|--|---------------------------|
| SOURCE™ 15RPC<br>ST 4.6/100, 1.7 mL | ~ 18 mg BSA<br>~ 14 mg Bacitracin<br>~ 45 mg insulin | 0.5 to 2.5 mL/min                       | 5 mL/min                               | 4/580                     |
| RESOURCE™ RPC, 1 mL                 | ~18 mg BSA<br>~14 mg Bacitracin<br>~45 mg insulin    | 1 to 5 mL/min                           | 10 mL/min                              | 4/580                     |
| RESOURCE™ RPC, 3 mL                 | ~ 18 mg BSA<br>~ 14 mg Bacitracin<br>~ 45 mg insulin | 1 to 5 mL/min                           | 10 mL/min                              | 4/580                     |
| SOURCE <sup>™</sup> 15RPC           | ~ 18 mg BSA<br>~ 14 mg Bacitracin<br>~ 45 mg insulin | 150 to 900 cm/h                         | 1800 cm/h                              |                           |
| SOURCE <sup>™</sup> 30RPC           | ~ 14 mg BSA<br>~ 23 mg bacitracin<br>~ 72 mg insulin | 100 to 1000 cm/h                        | 2000 cm/h                              |                           |

\*DBC determined at 10% breakthrough by frontal analysis. The DBC of an RPC resin is dependent on several parameters including the properties of the target molecule, the selectivity and pore size of the resin, buffer conditions, and flow rate. Capacities given here were determined using 0.1% TFA at a flow rate of 300 cm/h.

<sup>†</sup> See Appendix 4 to convert flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rates (mL/min) and vice versa. Flow rate used will depend also on the pressure specification of the chromatography system, the eluents used and the column bed height.

<sup>‡</sup> Maximum operating back pressure refers to the pressure above which the resin begins to compress.

## Maximum operating back pressure<sup>‡</sup> MPa/psi) 1 MPa = 10 bar

 $\int \mathcal{F}$ 

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

In RPC, many parameters, such as properties of the protein, flow rates, and selectivity of the resin play a significant role in the determination of binding capacity. Final capacity must be determined by experimentation.

Use RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC 1 mL for rapid screening and method development. Transfer to RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC 3 mL column for higher resolution and method development on a 10 cm bed height. You can pack SOURCE™ RPC resins in Tricorn<sup>™</sup> columns according to the conditions shown in Table 6.8.

**Table 6.8.** Packing volumes and bed heights for SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins for RPC

|                 | Volume      | Bed height  |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|
| Tricorn™ 10/100 | up to 8 mL  | up to 10 cm |
| Tricorn™ 10/150 | up to 12 mL | up to 15 cm |
| Tricorn™ 10/200 | up to 16 mL | up to 20 cm |



Select a production column such as FineLINE<sup>™</sup> for larger volumes.





# **Purification examples**

# Purification at high pH

Figure 6.12 shows the successful purification of  $\beta$ -lipotropin fragment 1 to 10 (M<sub>2</sub> 950) achieved by using high pH conditions (pH 12.0), possible only on polymer-based resin. At pH 2.0, the contaminants are eluted in the  $\beta$ -lipotropin peak.

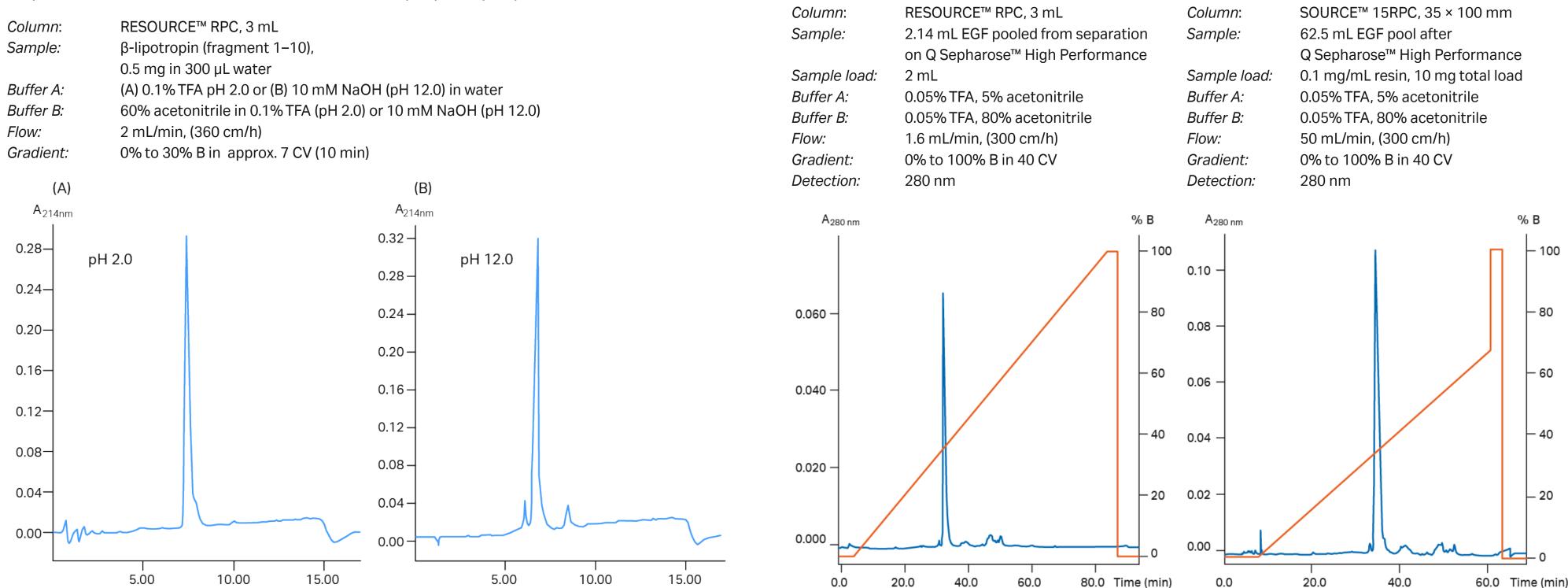


Fig 6.12. Purification of lipotropin fragment at (A) pH 2.0 and (B) pH 12.0.

Time (min)

Time (min)

# Polishing step and scale-up

Figure 6.13 shows a high-resolution preparative separation of recombinant human epidermal growth factor (EGF) expressed in yeast. Most impurities have been removed by an initial hydrophobic interaction chromatography step on Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) followed by ion exchange on Q Sepharose™ High Performance. The final polishing step on SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC was optimized on a RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 3 mL column before scale-up to a pilot-scale column.



# Hydroph tography

Fig 6.13. Preparative separation of a recombinant protein.

| Scaling up  |   | Performi  |
|---|---|---|
| Figure 6.14 shows the excellent scalability of  | -   | Use the ins   |
| packed and maintains its performance durin<br>of a model protein mixture was scaled up by<br>a 10 L FineLINE™ column.   |   | <b>For sar</b><br>Buffer A                            |
|   | n i.d. (24 mL); 200 × 300 mm column i.d. (10 L) | Buffer E  |
| Sample:angiotensin II, ribonuclease A and insuliSample load:0.064 mg/mL resin, total loadBuffer A:0.1% TFA, 0.05 M NaClBuffer B:0.1% TFA, 60% isopropanolFlow velocity:150 cm/h   | n   | <b>For sar</b><br>Buffer <i>A</i><br>Buffer B         |
| Gradient: 20% to 70% B, 5 CV<br>Detection: 280 nm   |   | First-tim   |
| $\begin{array}{c} A_{280  nm} \\ 2.0 \\ 1.0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \\ 6 \\ 7 \\ 8 \\ 9 \\ (CV) \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1$ | FineLINE <sup>M</sup> 200 L column              | <ol> <li>Flush</li> <li>Wash</li> <li>Wash</li> </ol> |

Fig 6.14. Scalability of SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC resin from 24 mL to 10 L.

## ning a separation

instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

### amples with unknown properties or known to require acidic conditions

r A: 0.1% TFA in 2% acetonitrile r B: 0.1% TFA in 80% acetonitrile

amples known to require basic conditions r A: 0.125% ammonium solution, pH 10.0 in 2% acetonitrile r B: 80% acetonitrile in buffer A

# me use or after long-term storage

sh out the storage solution with at least 5 CV of buffer A

sh the column using a gradient of 5 CV from 0% to 100% buffer B (or continue at 100% buffer B until UV signal table).

sh the column with a gradient of 2 CV from 100% to 0% buffer B.





# Separation by gradient elution

Use the instructions given here as a basis from which to optimize a separation.

- Flow: 2 mL/min, (SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC ST 4.6/100) 1 to 5 mL/min, (RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 1 mL) 1 to 5 mL/min, (RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 3 mL) or, for larger columns, 200 cm/h (SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC) and 100 to 1000 cm/h, (SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC) Collect fractions throughout the separation.
- 1. Equilibrate the column with at least 10 CV buffer A until the UV signal is stable.
- 2. Dissolve the sample in a small volume of buffer A. Filter or centrifuge to remove particulate matter if necessary. Apply to the column.
- 3. When the UV signal is stable, that is, when all unbound material has washed through the column, elute using a gradient of 10 to 20 CV from 0% to 100% buffer B.
- 4. Wash the column with at least 5 CV of 100% buffer B (or until UV signal is stable) to elute any remaining material.
- 5. Wash with a gradient of 2 to 3 CV from 100% to 0% buffer B.
- 6. Re-equilibrate with 10 CV of buffer A or until UV signal is stable.



Do not exceed the maximum recommended flow for the resin.

Check column performance regularly by determining column efficiency and peak symmetry. See Appendix 2.

# Hydroph tography

# Cleaning

Correct preparation of samples and eluents, including filtration, the removal of any particulate matter, and a final wash step in 100% buffer B, should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, reduced flow, increasing backpressure or complete blockage are all indications that the resin needs to be cleaned using more stringent procedures to remove tightly bound, precipitated, or denatured substances.

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

Reverse the direction of flow during cleaning when possible so that contaminants do not need to pass through the entire column length. Due to the design of the column, we do not recommend that you reverse the direction of flow for RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> columns. The number of CV and contact time required for each cleaning step may vary according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure does not restore column performance, change the top filter before trying alternative cleaning methods. Take care when changing a filter as this may affect the column packing and interfere with performance.

Contact time, organic solvent, and pH are significant parameters for successful cleaning, and different protocols may have to be developed and used in combination according to the nature of the contaminants. Examples of cleaning protocols are as follows:

Buffer A: 0.1% TFA

Buffer B: 0.1% TFA in 80% acetonitrile

Note: acetonitrile cannot be used for bioprocess applications, 2-propanol is an accepted alternative.

Flow:

- 1. Equilibrate the column with at least 10 CV of buffer A until the UV signal is stable.
- 2. Wash using a gradient of 20 to 30 CV from 0% to 100% buffer B.
- 3. Wash the column with at least 10 CV of 100% buffer B.
- 4. Wash using a gradient of 20 to 30 CV from 100% to 0% buffer B.
- 5. Wash the column with at least 10 CV of buffer A.

- 0.5 mL/min, (SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC ST 4.6/100)
- 1.0 mL/min, (RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 1 mL)
- 1.0 mL/min, (RESOURCE<sup>™</sup> 3 mL) or, for larger columns, 100 cm/h (SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC) and
- 100 cm/h, (SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC)

6. Equilibrate the column in at least 10 CV in the buffer A that will be used for the separation if different the buffer used in step 5. Transfer between the two eluents should be performed using a 2 to 3 CV gradient if the two buffers are significantly different.



# ography

Change to 0.1% TFA in 2-propanol for buffer B if column performance is not restored. Note that 2-propanol will increase back pressure, and flow rates may need to be reduced.



For removal of contaminants known to be acid or alkali-soluble the following eluents can be used, following the same procedure as outlined above:

**Removal of acid-soluble contaminants** Buffer A: 90% acetic acid Buffer B: 80% acetonitrile or 50% 2-propanol

**Removal of alkali-soluble contaminants** Buffer A: 0.5 M NaOH Buffer B: 50% acetonitrile or 50% 2-propanol

3

If neither of the protocols for acid- or alkali-soluble contaminants is successful, wash the column in 5 to 10 CV of 6 M guanidine hydrochloride.

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC resin can be cleaned using aggressive chemical agents since the polystyrene- based matrix is extremely stable. Sodium hydroxide is a very effective cleaning agent and SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC can be equilibrated with several CV of 0.5 to 1 M NaOH for cleaning. The ability to use such a strong cleaning agent is a major advantage of using SOURCE<sup>™</sup> resins for large-scale separations. At the production scale, other cleaning protocols may be applied to fulfill regulatory requirements.

# **Chemical stability**

For daily use, SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC resins are stable in:



# Storage

Store at 4°C to 30°C. Ensure that the column is sealed well to avoid drying out. Store unused resin at 4°C to 8°C in 20% ethanol. Do not freeze.

• All commonly used aqueous buffers: 1 M HCI, 1 M NaOH, 1 M HCI/90% methanol, 90% acetic acid, 0.45 M NaOH or 40% 2-propanol, 6 M guanidine hydrochloride, 1-propanol, 20% ethanol, acetone.

• Aqueous solutions pH 1.0 to 12.0 including trifluoroacetic acid (up to 0.3%), pentafluoro propionic acid (up to 0.3%), heptafluorobutyric acid (up to 0.3%), perchloric acid (up to 0.3%), formic acid (up to 0.3%), acetic acid (up to 60%), ammonium acetate (10 to 50 mM), phosphoric acid (10 to 50 mM).

• Water-miscible organic solvents including methanol, ethanol, acetonitrile, 1-propanol, 2-propanol.

• Ion-pairing agents such as trifluoroacetic acid, tributyl phosphate, triethylammonium phosphate, tetrabutylammonium salts, hexyl sulfate.

Note that ethanol, 1-propanol, and 2-propanol will increase backpressure, and flow rates may need to be reduced.

Avoid as, oxidizing agents and solutions < pH 1.0 and > pH 12.0.

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC and SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC columns:

wash with at least 10 CV distilled water, equilibrate with at least 10 CV of 20% ethanol or 70% acetonitrile. Note that columns used for bioprocess applications can only be stored in 20% ethanol.



ography

# **RPC and CIPP**

RPC can give extremely high resolution of complex mixtures for analytical purposes and, when full recovery of activity and tertiary structure is not essential, RPC has the potential for high-resolution purification as well as being an effective option for low-resolution desalting steps. In a purification strategy, RPC is most suited as a polishing step when high resolution of similar components is required, and most contaminants have been removed. See Chapter 4 for details on CIPP, a strategic approach to purification.

# **RPC** as a capture step

RPC is a suitable method for the capture of synthetic peptides and synthetic oligonucleotides, but less suitable for capture of peptides and proteins from biological sources when lipids and other highly hydrophobic components that bind strongly, reduce the dynamic capacity for the molecule of interest, and can be difficult to remove from the column. IEX and HIC on larger particle sizes above 75 µm are more appropriate.

# **RPC for intermediate purification**

RPC can be suitable for intermediate purification when the ability to resolve similar components is of increased importance and the focus is on resolution and recovery to separate target molecule from most of the bulk impurities such as other proteins, peptides, nucleic acids, endotoxins, and viruses.

# **RPC** as a polishing step

The polishing step is used to remove trace contaminants and impurities, leaving the purified biomolecule in a form suitable for its intended use. The goal is to achieve 100% purity in less than two steps and with high recovery. The excellent resolving power of RPC makes it the method of choice when dealing with slight structural variants (dimers, oligomers, aggregates, oxidized amino acids, protease-clipped molecules, deaminated amino acid residues) and other micro-heterogeneity. An example of RPC used as a polishing step is shown in Figure 6.13.

# tography

# Appendix 1 Sample preparation



Samples for chromatographic purification should be clear and free from particulate matter. Simple steps to clarify a sample before beginning purification will avoid clogging the column, may reduce the need for stringent washing procedures, and can extend the life of the chromatographic resin.

Sample extraction procedures and the selection of buffers, additives, and detergents are determined largely by the source of the material, the stability of the target molecule, the chromatographic techniques that will be employed, and the intended use of the product. These subjects are dealt with in general terms in the *Strategies for Protein Purification* Handbook and more specifically according to the target molecule in the Affinity Chromatography Handbook, Vol.1: Antibodies and Affinity Chromatography Handbook, Vol.2: Tagged proteins, available from Cytiva.

# **Sample stability**

In most cases, biological activity needs to be retained after purification. Retaining the activity of the target molecule is also an advantage when following the progress of the purification, since detection of the target molecule often relies on its biological activity. Denaturation of sample components often leads to precipitation or enhanced nonspecific adsorption, both of which will impair column function. Hence, there are many advantages to checking the stability limits of the sample and working within these limits during purification.

Proteins contain a high degree of tertiary structure, kept together by van der Waals' forces, ionic and hydrophobic interactions, and hydrogen bonding. Any conditions capable of destabilizing these forces may cause denaturation and/or precipitation. By contrast, peptides contain a low degree of tertiary structure. Their native state is dominated by secondary structures, stabilized by hydrogen bonding. Hence, peptides tolerate a wider range of conditions than proteins. This basic difference in native structures is also reflected in that proteins are not easily refolded, while peptides often refold spontaneously.



You can perform stability tests before beginning to develop a purification protocol. The list below may be used as a basis for such testing:

- Test pH stability in steps of one pH unit between pH 2.0 and pH 9.0.
- Test salt stability with 0 to 2 M NaCl and 0 to 2 M ( $NH_a$ )<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>a</sub>, in steps of 0.5 M.
- Test the stability toward acetonitrile and methanol by increasing from 0% to 50% with 10% increase each time.
- Test the temperature stability in 10°C steps from 4° C to 40° C.
- Test the stability and occurrence of proteolytic activity by leaving an aliquot of the sample at room temperature overnight. Centrifuge each sample and measure activity and UV absorbance at 280 nm in the supernatant.



tography

# **Sample clarification**

Centrifugation and filtration are standard laboratory techniques for sample clarification and are used routinely when handling small samples.



We recommend that you centrifuge and filter any sample immediately before chromatographic purification.

# Centrifugation

Centrifugation removes lipids and particulate matter, such as cell debris. If the sample is still not clear after centrifugation, use filter paper or a 5 µm filter as a first step and one of the filters below as a second step filter.

- For small sample volumes or proteins that adsorb to filters, centrifuge at 10 000 × g for 15 min.
- For cell lysates, centrifuge at 40 000 to 50 000 × g for 30 min.
- Serum samples can be filtered through glass wool after centrifugation to remove any remaining lipids.

# **Filtration**

Filtration removes particulate matter. Whatman<sup>™</sup> syringe filters, which give the least amount of nonspecific binding of proteins, are composed of cellulose acetate (CA), regenerated cellulose (RC), or polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) (Table A1.1).

For sample preparation before chromatography, you can select a filter pore size in relation to the bead size of the chromatographic resin (Table A1.2).

Nominal 1.0

0.45

0.22

M

Table A1.1 **Filter por** 

| 1. Whatman™ syringe filters for filt | ration of samples |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|

| ore size (µm) | Up to sample volume (mL) | Whatman <sup>™</sup> syringe filter <sup>*</sup> | Membra |
|---------------|--------------------------|--|--------|
| 0.8           | 100                      | Puradisc <sup>™</sup> FP                         | CA     |
| 0.45          | 1                        | Puradisc <sup>™</sup> 4                          | PVDF   |
| 0.45          | 10                       | Puradisc™ 13                                     | PVDF   |
| 0.45          | 100                      | Puradisc™ 25                                     | PVDF   |
| 0.45          | 10                       | Protein Prep for ÄKTA™ systems 13/0.45 RC        | RC     |
| 0.45          | 10                       | SPARTAN™ 13                                      | RC     |
| 0.45          | 100                      | Protein Prep for ÄKTA™ systems 30/0.45 RC        | RC     |
| 0.45          | 100                      | SPARTAN™ 30                                      | RC     |
| 0.45          | 100                      | Puradisc <sup>™</sup> FP                         | CA     |
| 0.2           | 1                        | Puradisc <sup>™</sup> 4                          | PVDF   |
| 0.2           | 10                       | Puradisc™ 13                                     | PVDF   |
| 0.2           | 100                      | Puradisc™ 25                                     | PVDF   |
| 0.2           | 10                       | Protein Prep for ÄKTA™ systems 13/0.2 RC         | RC     |
| 0.2           | 10                       | SPARTAN™ 13                                      | RC     |
| 0.2           | 100                      | Protein Prep for ÄKTA™ systems 30/0.2 RC         | RC     |
| 0.2           | 100                      | SPARTAN™ 30                                      | RC     |
| 0.2           | 100                      | Puradisc™ FP 30                                  | CA     |

\*The number indicates the diameter (mm) of the syringe filter

Table A1.2. Filter pore size selection based on bead size

| l pore size of filter (µm) | Particle size of the chromatographic resin (µm)                        |
|----------------------------|--|
|                            | 75 and upward  |
|                            | 40   |
|                            | below 15 or when extra clean samples or sterile filtration is required |

Check the recovery of the target protein in a test run. Some proteins might adsorb nonspecifically to filter surfaces.

### rane

- tography

# Desalting

Desalting columns are suitable for any sample volume and will rapidly remove low molecular weight contaminants in a single step at the same time as transferring the sample into the correct buffer conditions. Centrifugation and/or filtration of the sample before desalting is still recommended. For detailed procedures, see Buffer exchange and desalting later in this appendix.

At laboratory scale, when samples are reasonably clean after filtration or centrifugation, the buffer exchange and desalting step can be avoided. In HIC, you can adjust the salt concentration and pH of the sample.

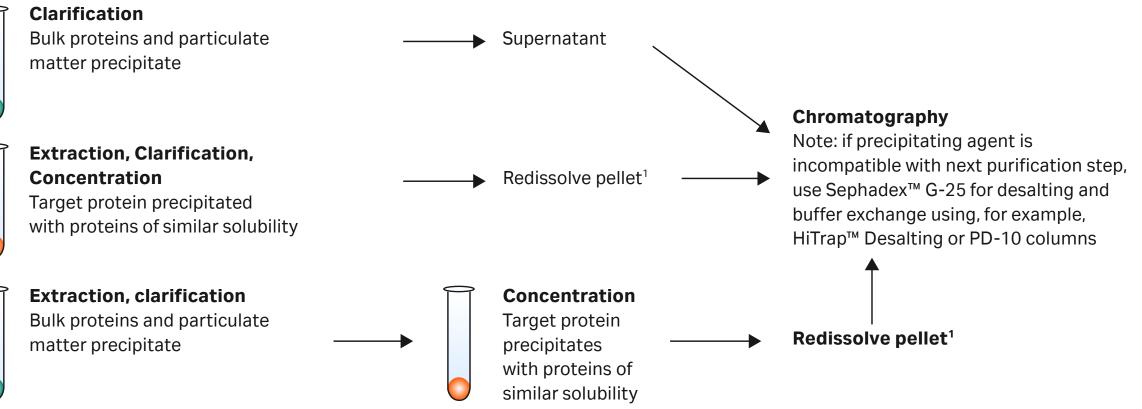
# **Specific sample preparation steps**

Specific sample preparation steps might be required if the crude sample contain contaminants such as lipids, lipoproteins, or phenol red that might build up on a column or if certain gross impurities, such as bulk protein, should be removed before any chromatographic step.

# **Fractional precipitation**

Fractional precipitation is frequently used at laboratory scale to remove gross impurities from small sample volumes, and occasionally used in small-scale commercial production. Precipitation techniques separate fractions by the principle of differential solubility. Because protein species differ in their degree of hydrophobicity, increased salt concentrations can enhance hydrophobic interactions between the proteins and cause precipitation.

Fractional precipitation can be applied to remove gross impurities in three different ways, as shown in Figure A1.1.



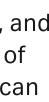
<sup>1</sup> Remember: not all proteins are easy to redissolve, yield can be reduced

Fig A1.1. Three ways to use precipitation.



Examples of precipitation agents are reviewed in Table A1.3. The most common precipitation method using ammonium sulfate is described in more detail.

Precipitation techniques can be affected by temperature, pH, and sample concentration. These parameters should be controlled to ensure reproducible results.





### Table A1.3. Examples of precipitation agents

| <b>Precipitation agent</b>                   | Typical conditions for use  | Sample type  | Comment   |
|--|---|--|---|
| Ammonium sulfate                             | As described below.   | > 1 mg/mL proteins especially immunoglobulins.           | Stabilizes proteins, no denaturation; supernatant can go directly to HIC.   |
|  |   |  | Helps to reduce lipid.  |
| Dextran sulfate                              | Add 0.04 mL of 10% dextran sulfate and 1 mL of 1 M CaCl <sub>2</sub> /mL of sample, mix 15 min, centrifuge at 10 000 × g, discard pellet. | Samples with high levels of lipoprotein (e.g., ascites). | Precipitates lipoprotein.   |
| Polyvinyl                                    | Add 3% (w/v), stir 4 h, centrifuge 17 000 × g, discard pellet.  | Samples with high levels of lipoprotein (e.g., ascites). | Alternative to dextran.   |
| Polyethylene<br>(PEG, M <sub>r</sub> > 4000) | Up to 20% w/v   | Plasma proteins.   | No denaturation, supernatant goes directly to IEX or AC. Complete removal mig<br>be difficult. Stabilizes proteins. |
| Acetone (cold)                               | Up to 80% v/v at 0°C. Collect pellet after centrifugation at full speed<br>in a microcentrifuge   |  | Can denature protein irreversibly. Useful for peptide precipitation or concentration of sample for electrophoresis. |
| Polyethyleneimine                            | 0.1% w/v  |  | Precipitates aggregated nucleoproteins.   |
| Protamine sulfate                            | 1% w/v  |  | Precipitates aggregated nucleoproteins.   |
| Streptomycin sulfate                         | 1% w/v  |  | Precipitation of nucleic acids.   |
| Caprylic acid                                | (X/15) g where X = volume of sample.  | Antibody concentration should be > 1 mg/mL.              | Precipitates bulk of proteins from sera or ascites, leaving immunoglobulins in solution.                            |

\*Details taken from: Scopes R.K., Protein Purification, Principles and Practice, Springer, (1994), J.C. Janson, Protein Purification, Principles, High Resolution Methods and Applications, 3rd ed. Wiley Inc, (2011) Personal communications.





## Ammonium sulfate precipitation

- **Jul** Some proteins can be damaged by ammonium sulfate. You should take care when adding crystalline ammonium sulfate: high local concentrations can cause contamination of the precipitate with unwanted proteins.
- For routine, reproducible purification, you should avoid precipitation with ammonium sulfate in favor of لحى chromatography.
- Precipitation is ineffective for protein concentrations below 1 mg/mL. لى ا

Solutions needed for precipitation:

Saturated ammonium sulfate solution (add 100 g ammonium sulfate to 100 mL distilled water, stir to dissolve).

1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0.

Buffer for first purification step.

- 1. Filter (0.45  $\mu$ m) or centrifuge the sample (10 000 × g at 4°C).
- 2. Add 1 part 1 M Tris-HCI, pH 8.0 to 10 parts sample volume to maintain pH.
- 3. Stir gently. Add ammonium sulfate solution, drop by drop. Add up to 50% saturation\*. Stir for 1 h.
- 4. Centrifuge for 20 min at 10 000 × g.
- 5. Remove supernatant. Wash the pellet twice by resuspension in an equal volume of ammonium sulfate solution of the same concentration (i.e., a solution that will not redissolve the precipitated protein or cause further precipitation). Centrifuge again.
- 6. Dissolve pellet in a small volume of the buffer to be used for the next step.
- 7. Ammonium sulfate is removed during clarification/buffer exchange steps with Sephadex™ G-25, using desalting columns (see Buffer exchange and desalting later in this appendix).

\*The percentage saturation can be adjusted either to precipitate a target molecule or to precipitate contaminants.

# tography

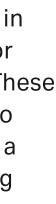
The quantity of ammonium sulfate required to reach a given degree of saturation varies according to temperature. Table A1.4 shows the quantities required at 20°C.

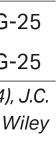
| Final norcent saturation to be obtained |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          | agents must always be removed to allow complete refolding of the protein and t<br>— maximize recovery of mass and activity. A chromatographic step often removes |         |         |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|--------|---------|---------|-------|----------|--|---------|---------|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|   | 20  | 25  | 30  | 35    | 40    | 45    | 50     | 55      | 60      | 65    | 70       | 75   | 80      | 85      | 90  | 95  | 100 | _ denaturant during purification. Table A1.5 gives examples of common denaturin  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Starting percent saturation             |     |     | An  | nount | ofamr | moniu | m sulp | hate to | o add ( | grams | ) per li | ter of   | solutio | on at 2 | 0°C |     |     | agents.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0                                       | 113 | 144 | 176 | 208   | 242   | 277   | 314    | 351     | 390     | 430   | 472      | 516  | 561     | 608     | 657 | 708 | 761 | Table A1.5. Examples of denaturing agents  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5                                       |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          |  |         |         |     |     |     | Denaturing agent Typical conditions for use Removal/comment  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5                                       | 85  | 115 |     | 179   | 212   |       |        | 319     | 358     | 397   | 439      | 481  | 526     | 572     | 621 |     | 723 | Urea 2 M to 8 M Remove using Sephadex™   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10                                      | 57  | 86  | 117 | 149   | 182   | 216   | 251    | 287     | 325     | 364   | 405      | 447  | 491     | 537     | 584 | 634 | 685 | Guanidine hydrochloride 3 M to 6 M Remove using Sephadex™  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 15                                      | 28  | 58  | 88  | 119   | 151   | 185   | 219    | 255     | 293     | 331   | 371      | 413  | 456     | 501     | 548 | 596 | 647 | Reprinted with permission from Scopes R.K., Protein Purification, Principles and Practice, Springer, (1994), J.                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 20                                      | 0   | 29  | 59  | 89    | 121   | 154   | 188    | 223     | 260     | 298   | 337      | 378  | 421     | 465     | 511 | 559 | 609 | Janson and L. Rydén, Protein Purification, Principles, High Resolution Methods and Applications, 2nd ed.<br>– Inc, (1998) and other sources. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 25                                      |     | 0   | 29  | 60    | 91    | 123   | 157    | 191     | 228     | 265   | 304      | 344  | 386     | 429     | 475 | 522 | 571 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 30                                      |     |     | 0   | 30    | 61    | 92    | 125    | 160     | 195     | 232   | 270      | 309  | 351     | 393     | 438 | 485 | 533 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 35                                      |     |     |     | 0     | 30    | 62    | 94     | 128     | 163     | 199   | 236      | 275  | 316     | 358     | 402 | 447 | 495 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 40                                      |     |     |     |       | 0     | 31    | 63     | 96      | 130     | 166   | 202      | 241  | 281     | 322     | 365 | 410 | 457 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 45                                      |     |     |     |       |       | 0     | 31     | 64      | 98      | 132   | 169      | 206  | 245     | 286     | 329 | 373 | 419 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 50                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       | 0      | 32      | 65      | 99    | 135      | 172  | 210     | 250     | 292 | 335 | 381 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 55                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        | 0       | 33      | 66    | 101      | 138  | 175     | 215     | 256 | 298 | 343 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 60                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         | 0       | 33    | 67       | 103  | 140     | 179     | 219 | 261 | 305 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 65                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         | 0     | 34       | 69   | 105     | 143     | 183 | 224 | 267 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 70                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       | 0        | 34   | 70      | 107     | 146 | 186 | 228 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 75                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          | 0  | 35      | 72      | 110 | 149 | 190 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 80                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          |  | 0       | 36      | 73  | 112 | 152 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 85                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          |  |         | 0       | 37  | 75  | 114 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 90                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          |  |         |         | 0   | 37  | 76  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 95                                      |     |     |     |       |       |       |        |         |         |       |          |  |         |         |     | 0   | 38  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table A1.4. Quantities of ammonium sulfate are required to reach given degrees of saturation at 20°C

## **Resolubilization of protein precipitates**

Many proteins are easily resolubilized in a small amount of the buffer to be used in the next chromatographic step. However, a denaturing agent may be required for less soluble proteins. Specific conditions will depend upon the specific protein. These agents must always be removed to allow complete refolding of the protein and to







# **Buffer exchange and desalting**

Dialysis is frequently mentioned in the literature as a technique to remove salt or other small molecules and to exchange the buffer composition of a sample. However, dialysis is generally a very slow technique, requiring large volumes of buffer. During handling or due to proteolytic breakdown or non-specific binding to the dialysis membranes, you have a risk losing the protein sample. A simple and fast technique is to use a desalting column, packed with Sephadex<sup>™</sup> G-25, to perform a group separation between high and low molecular weight substances. Proteins are separated from salts and other small molecules.

In a fast, single step, the sample is desalted, transferred into a new buffer and low molecular weight materials are removed.

Desalting columns are used not only to remove low molecular weight contaminants, such as salt but also for buffer exchange before or after different chromatographic steps and for the rapid removal of reagents to terminate a reaction.

Sample volumes of up to 30% of the total volume of the desalting column can be processed. Sample concentration does not influence the separation if the concentration of proteins does not exceed 70 mg/mL using normal aqueous buffers. The sample should be fully dissolved. Centrifuge or filter to remove particulate material.

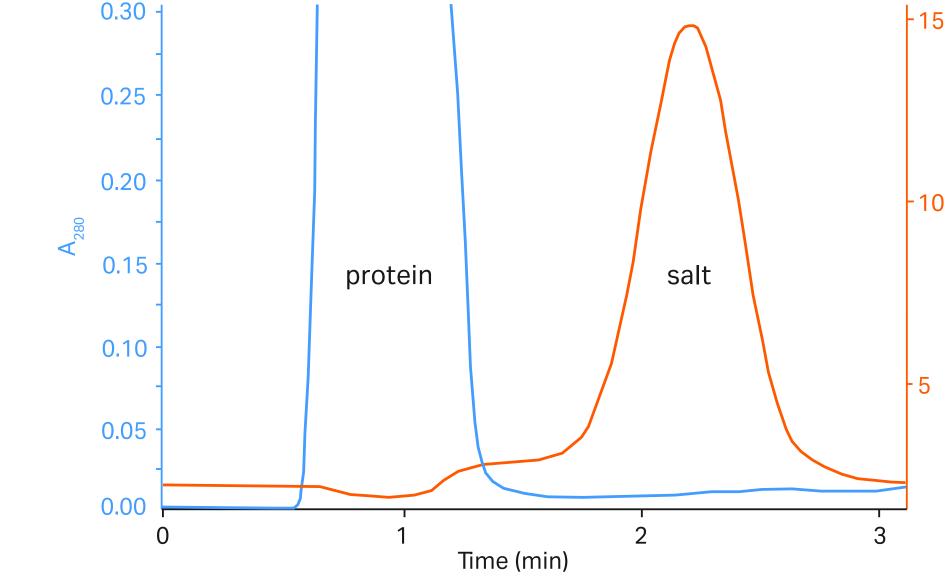


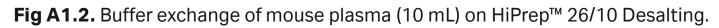
For small sample volumes, we can dilute the sample with the start buffer for chromatographic purification, but cell debris and particulate matter must still be removed.



Volatile buffers such as 100 mM ammonium acetate or 100 mM ammonium hydrogen carbonate can be used if it is necessary to avoid the presence of NaCI.

Figure A1.2 shows a typical buffer exchange and desalting separation. The process can be monitored by following changes in UV absorption and conductivity.







# Hydroph tography

For laboratory-scale operations, Table A1.6 shows a selection guide for prepacked, ready-to-use desalting and buffer exchange columns.

| •                       |                    |                            |      |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|------|
| Column                  | Sample volume (mL) | Sample elution volume (mL) | 11   |
| PD™ MiniTrap™ G-25      | 0.2 to 0.5         | 0.1 to 0.5                 | 2.F  |
| PD™-10 (gravity column) | 1.5 to 2.5 mL      | 2.5 to 3.5                 | 3. V |
| HiTrap™ Desalting 5 mL  | 0.25 to 1.5        | 1.0 to 2.0                 | b    |
| HiPrep™ 26/10 Desalting | 2.5 to 15          | 7.5 to 20                  | C    |

**Table A1.6.** Selection guide for desalting and buffer exchange columns

To desalt larger sample volumes:

- You can connect up to five HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Desalting 5 mL columns in series to increase the sample volume capacity, for example, two columns: sample volume 3 mL, five columns: sample volume 7.5 mL.
- You can connect up to four HiPrep<sup>™</sup> 26/10 Desalting columns in series to increase the sample volume capacity, for example, two columns: sample volume 30 mL, four columns: sample volume 60 mL. Even with four columns in series, the sample can be processed in 20 to 30 min, at room temperature, in aqueous buffers.

Instructions are supplied with each column. Desalting and buffer exchange can take less than 5 min per sample with greater than 95% recovery for most proteins.

# Manual desalting with HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Desalting 5 mL using a syringe

Note: 5 mL/min corresponds to approximately 120 drops/min when using a HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 5 mL column. A simple peristaltic pump can also be used to apply sample and buffers.

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

 $\left( \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{F} \end{array} \right)$ 

Sample load (mL)

- 0.25
- 0.50
- 1.00
- 1.50

1. Fill the syringe with buffer. Remove the stop plug. To avoid introducing air into the column, connect the column "drop to drop" to the syringe (via the adapter provided).

Remove the snap-off end at the column outlet.

Wash the column with 25 mL buffer at 5 mL/min to remove completely the 20% ethanol (supplied as storage buffer). If air is trapped in the column, wash with degassed buffer until the air disappears. Air bubbles introduced onto the column by accident during sample application do not influence the separation.

4. Apply the sample using a syringe (2 to 5 mL) at a flow rate between 1 to 10 mL/min. Discard the liquid eluted from the column.

5. If the sample volume is less than 1.5 mL, change to buffer and proceed with the injection until a total of 1.5 mL has been eluted. Discard the eluted liquid.

6. Elute the protein with the appropriate volume selected from Table A1.7.

Collect the desalted protein in the volume indicated.

The maximum recommended sample volume is 1.5 mL. See Table A1.7 for the effect of reducing the sample volume applied to the column.

A simple peristaltic pump can also be used to apply samples and buffers.

Remaining salt (%) Add buffer (mL) Elute and collect (mL) Yield (%) **Dilution factor** 4.0 1.25 1.0 0.0 > 95 1.0 1.5 > 95 < 0.1 3.0 2.0 < 0.2 0.5 > 95 2.0 2.0 > 95 < 0.2 1.3 0

Table A1.7. Recommended sample and elution volumes using a syringe



Hydroph

# Simple desalting with ÄKTA start<sup>™</sup> protein purification system

ÄKTA start<sup>™</sup> protein purification system (Fig A1.3) makes it easy to purify proteins, with predefined quick start and editable method templates, real-time run control and visualization, and single-click operations with a compact and portable size suitable for cold-room operations.

Follow the instructions in "Desalting using ÄKTA™ card" training cue card from Cytiva.

# **Removal of lipoproteins**

Lipoproteins and other lipid material can rapidly clog chromatography columns and it is advisable to remove them before beginning purification. Precipitation agents such as dextran sulfate and polyvinylpyrrolidine, described under Fractional precipitation, are recommended to remove high levels of lipoproteins from samples such as ascitic fluid.



Centrifuge samples to avoid the risk of nonspecific binding of the target molecule to a filter.

Samples such as serum can be filtered through glass wool to remove remaining lipids.

# **Removal of phenol red**

Phenol red is frequently used at laboratory scale as a pH indicator in cell culture. Although not directly interfering with purification, phenol red may bind to certain purification resin and should be removed as early as possible to avoid the risk of contamination. Phenol red is known to bind to anion exchange resin at pH greater than 7.0.



Use a desalting column to simultaneously remove phenol red (a low molecular weight molecule) and transfer sample to the correct buffer conditions for further purification, see Buffer exchange and desalting earlier in this appendix.

# **Removal of low molecular weight contaminants**



If samples contain a high level of low molecular weight contaminants, use a desalting column before the first chromatographic purification step (see Buffer exchange and desalting earlier in this appendix).



Fig A1.3. ÄKTA start<sup>™</sup> is an easy-to-use chromatography system and is an excellent choice for automated desalting of proteins.



# Appendix 2 Column packing and preparation

# phobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

Prepacked columns from Cytiva will provide reproducible results and good performance.



Use small, prepacked columns for resin screening and method optimization to increase efficiency in method development, for example, HiTrap<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Selection Kit, PreDictor<sup>™</sup> Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC Screening Kit.

Efficient column packing is essential for a good separation, especially when using gradient elution. A poorly packed column gives rise to poor and uneven flow, peak broadening, and loss of resolution. If column packing is required, you can follow these guidelines, which are applicable to all scales of operation:

- When using a binding technique, you can use short wide columns (typically 5 to 15 cm bed height) for rapid purification, even with low linear flow.
- The amount of resin required will depend on the binding capacity of the resin and the amount of sample. The binding capacity of a resin is influenced by the hydrophobic nature of the sample as well as the resin itself and must be determined empirically.
- Once separation parameters have been determined, scale up a purification by increasing the diameter of the column to increase column volume. You can avoid increasing the length of the column as this will alter separation conditions.

HIC resin can be packed in Tricorn<sup>™</sup>, XK, or HiScale<sup>™</sup> columns available from Cytiva. SOURCE<sup>™</sup> RPC resins can be packed in Tricorn<sup>™</sup> or HR columns also available from Cytiva. Packing instruction videos for Tricorn<sup>™</sup> and XK columns are available online. Figure.A2.1 shows some of the steps involved in packing a columns.

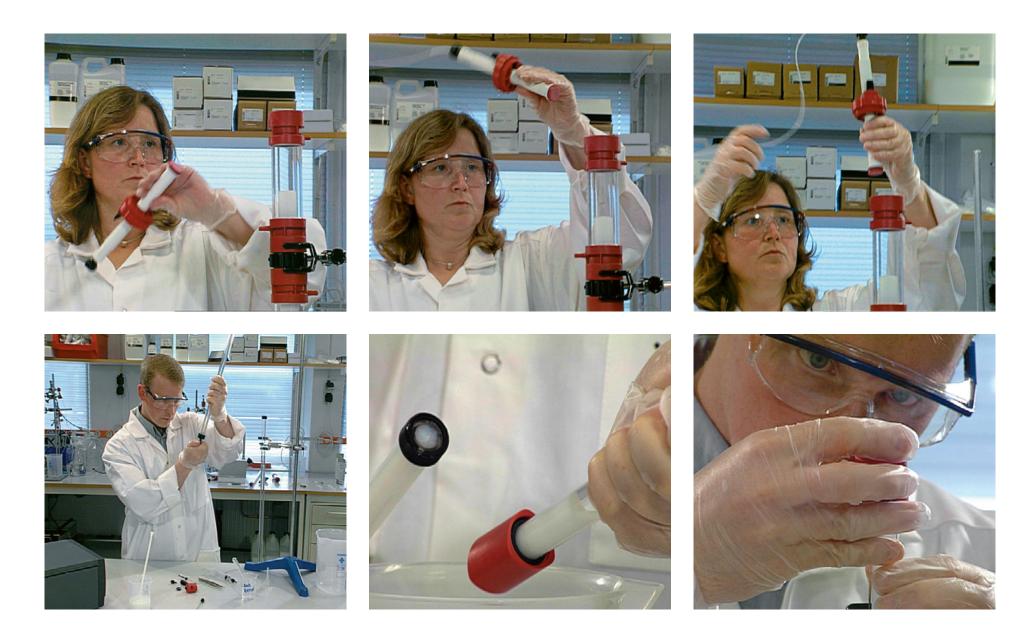


Fig A2.1. Column packing in progress.



# **General packing procedures**

- 1. Equilibrate all materials to the temperature at which the separation will be performed.
- 2. Eliminate air by flushing column end pieces with the recommended buffer. Ensure no air is trapped under the column net. Close column outlet leaving 1 to 2 cm of buffer in the column.
- 3. Gently resuspend the resin.

Note that HIC resin from Cytiva is supplied ready to use. Decanting of fines that could clog the column is unnecessary.

Avoid using magnetic stirrers since they may damage the matrix.

- 4. Estimate the amount of slurry (resuspended resin) required based on the recommendations supplied.
- 5. You can pour the required volume of slurry into the column. Pouring down a glass rod held against the wall of the column will minimize the introduction of air bubbles.
- 6. Immediately fill the column with buffer.
- 7. Mount the column top piece and connect to a pump.
- 8. Open the column outlet and set the pump to the desired flow rate.

When slurry volume is greater than the total volume of the column, connect a second glass column to act as a reservoir (see Ordering information for details). This ensures that the slurry has a constant diameter during packing, minimizing turbulence and improving column packing conditions.

If the recommended flow rate cannot be obtained, you can use the maximum flow rate the pump can deliver.

Do not exceed the maximum operating pressure of the resin or column.

9. Maintain the packing flow rate for at least three column volumes after a constant bed height is obtained. Mark the bed height on the column.

**Jul** 

M

ᠭ

- Do not exceed 75% of the packing flow rate during any purification.
- 10. Stop the pump and close the column outlet. Remove the top piece and carefully, you can fill the rest of the column with buffer to form an upward meniscus at the top.
- 11. Insert the adapter into the column at an angle, ensuring that no air is trapped under the net.
- 12. Slide the adapter slowly down the column (the outlet of the adapter should be open) until the mark is reached. Lock the adapter in position.
- 13. Connect the column to the pump and begin equilibration. Reposition the adapter if necessary.
  - You must wash the resins thoroughly to remove the storage solution, usually 20% ethanol. Residual ethanol may interfere with subsequent procedures.
  - Many resins equilibrated with sterile phosphate-buffered saline containing an antimicrobial agent may be stored at 4°C for up to 1 month, but follow the specific storage instructions supplied with the product.





# **Column selection**

Tricorn<sup>™</sup>, XK, and HiScale<sup>™</sup> columns are fully compatible with the high flow rates achievable with modern resins and a broad range of column dimensions are available. In most cases the binding capacity of the resin and the amount of sample to be purified will determine the column size required.

# **Column packing and efficiency**

Column efficiency expressed as the number of theoretical plates per meter chromatography bed (N) or as H (height equivalent to a theoretical plate, HETP), which is the bed length (L) divided by the plate number. Since column efficiency is related to the peak broadening that can occur on a column, it can be calculated from the expression:

 $N = 5.54 \times (V_{R}/W_{h})^{2}$ 

 $V_{R}$  = volume eluted from the start of sample application to the peak maximum

 $W_{h}$  = peak width measured as the width of the recorded peak at half of the peak height

H is calculated from the expression:

$$H = \frac{L}{N}$$

L = height of packed bed



Measurements of V<sub>R</sub> and W<sub>b</sub> can be made in distance (mm) or volume (mL) but both parameters must be expressed in the same unit.

Column performance should be checked at regular intervals by injecting acetone to determine column efficiency (N) and peak symmetry (asymmetry factor, A<sub>c</sub>). Since the observed value for N depends on experimental factors such as flow rate and sample loading, comparisons must be made under identical conditions. In HIC, efficiency is measured under isocratic conditions by injecting acetone (which does not interact with the resins) and measuring the eluted peak as shown in Figure A2.2.

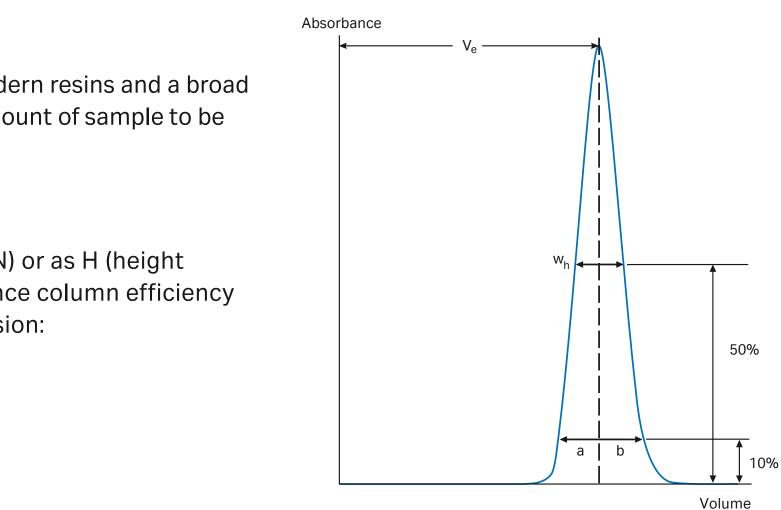


Fig A2.2. Measurement of efficiency of column performance.



As a rule, a good H value is about two to three times the average particle diameter of the medium being packed. For a 90 µm particle, this means an H value of 0.018 cm to 0.027 cm.

The asymmetry factor  $(A_s)$  is expressed as:

$$A_s = b_a$$

where

a = First half peak width at 10% of peak height

b = Second half peak width at 10% of peak height

A<sub>s</sub> should be as close as possible to 1. A reasonable A<sub>s</sub> value for a short column when used for HIC or RPC is 0.80 to 1.80.

An extensive leading edge is usually a sign that the resin is packed too tightly, and extensive tailing is usually a  $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ sign that the resin is packed too loosely.

Run at least two column volumes of buffer through a newly packed column to ensure that the resin is  $\int \mathcal{F}$ equilibrated with start buffer. Use pH monitoring to check the pH of the eluent buffer.

# Hydrophob ď pha se tography

# **Appendix 3** Selection of labscale purification equipment

# ography:

Simple HIC, such as elution by a step-gradient, can be performed using a syringe or peristaltic pump with prepacked HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns. A chromatography system is required when reproducible results are important and when manual purification becomes time consuming and inefficient. This happens when large sample volumes are handled, or many different samples purified. The progress of the purification can be monitored automatically and high-resolution separations are accurately controlled with linear gradient elution methods.

Table A3.1 lists the standard system configurations for currently available systems. See ÄKTA™ Laboratory-scale chromatography Systems: Instrument Management Handbook.

### **Table A3.1.** The AKTA<sup>™</sup> chromatography system types and their configurations

ÄKTA<sup>™</sup> lab-scale protein purification systems are designed for purification of biomolecules, providing speed and flexibility in research and process development. ÄKTA<sup>™</sup> systems use intelligent UNICORN<sup>™</sup> system control software to combine simplicity with power in protein purification from your lab bench to process development and full-scale bioprocess production. Scientists all over the world rely on ÄKTA<sup>™</sup> systems, columns, and resins for their protein purification needs.

Applications

Automated an Support for aff and multimod Support for siz Support for hy Software com Microscale put Automated bu Scale-up, proc Method develo Automated res Automated mu Advanced auto Recommended Max. operating









|   | ÄKTA start™   | ÄKTA go™  | ÄKTA pure™  | ÄKTA avant™   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3   | Transition from manual<br>to automated protein<br>purification/education<br>in protein purification | Achieve desired purity with<br>ease in routine purifications—<br>make the most of valuable<br>bench/cold-room space | Flexibility in research—<br>match most current<br>and future purification<br>challenges | Productivity in proc<br>development—fast<br>secure developmen<br>purification process |
| and reproducible protein purification including support for gradient elution              | •   | •   | ٠   | ٠   |
| affinity chromatography, ion exchange chromatography,<br>odal (mixed mode) chromatography | •   | •   | •   | ٠   |
| size exclusion chromatography   | Limited capabilities  | •   | •   | •   |
| hydrophobic interaction chromatography  |   | Limited capabilities  | •   | •   |
| mpatible with regulatory requirements, e.g., GLP, GMP                                     |   | •   | •   | •   |
| ourification  |   |   | •   |   |
| buffer preparation including pH scouting  |   |   |   | •   |
| ocess development   |   |   | Optional  | •   |
| elopment and optimization using design of experiments (DoE)                               |   |   | Optional  | •   |
| resin or column scouting  |   |   | Optional  | •   |
| multistep purification  |   |   | Optional  | Optional  |
| utomation including external equipment  |   |   | Optional  | Optional  |
| ded flow rate (mL/min)  | 0.5–5.0   | 0.01–25.0   | 0.001-25/0.01-150   | 0.001-25/0.01-15  |
| ing pressure (MPa)  | 0.5   | 5   | 20/5  | 20/5  |



### nt™

|   | - | - | - |   | - | - |   | - | - | - | - |   | - | - | - | - | - |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|   | r | ) | r | ( | 5 | ( | 2 | 6 | Э | 5 | 5 | S | ò |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   | 5 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   | Э |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   | 2 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   | ĺ |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Ī |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • |   |   | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • |   |   | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   | ĺ |   | ĺ |   |   |   |   |   | ĺ |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   | ! |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| a | I |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • |   |   |   |   |   |   | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| 1 | 1 | • |   |   | 1 | - | E | ) | C | ) |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

## Appendix 4 Converting from flow velocity to vo umetric flow **TEES**



It is convenient when comparing results for columns of different sizes to express flow as flow velocity (cm/h). However, flow is usually measured in volumetric flow rate (mL/min). To convert between flow velocity and volumetric flow rate use one of the formulae below.

## From flow velocity (cm/h) to volumetric flow rate (mL/min)

Volumetric flow rate (mL/min) =  $\frac{\text{Flow velocity (cm/h)}}{60} \times \text{column cross sectional}$ area (cm<sup>2</sup>)  $=\frac{Y}{60}\times\frac{\pi\times d^2}{4}$ 

where

Y = flow velocity in cm/h

d = column inner diameter in cm

## Example:

What is the volumetric flow rate in an XK 16/70 column (i.d. 1.6 cm) when the flow velocity is 150 cm/h?

Y = flow velocity = 150 cm/h d = inner diameter of the column = 1.6 cm

Volumetric flow rate =  $\frac{150 \times \pi \times 1.6 \times 1.6}{60 \times 4}$  mL/min = 5.03 mL/min

## From volumetric flow rate (mL/min) to flow velocity (cm/h)

Flow velocity (cm/h) =  $\frac{\text{Volumetric flow rate (mL/min) × 60}}{\text{column cross sectional area (cm<sup>2</sup>)}}$ 

$$= Z \times 60 \times \frac{4}{\pi \times d^2}$$

where

Z = volumetric flow rate in mL/min

d = column inner diameter in cm

Example:

What is the linear flow in a Tricorn<sup>™</sup> 5/50 column (i.d. 0.5 cm) when the volumetric flow rate is 1 mL/min?

Z = volumetric flow rate = 1 mL/min d = column inner diameter = 0.5 cm Flow velocity = 1 × 60 ×  $\frac{4}{\pi \times 0.5 \times 0.5}$  cm/h = 305.6 cm/h

## From volumetric flow rate (mL/min) to using a syringe

1 mL/min = approximately 30 drops/min on a HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 1 mL column

5 mL/min = approximately 120 drops/min on a HiTrap<sup>™</sup> 5 mL column

## Hydrophol tography

## Appendix 5 Conversion data: proteins, column **Dressures**



## Table A5.1. Conversion data: proteins

| Mass (g/mol)            | 1 µg                                       | 1 nmol | Protein              |
|-------------------------|--|--------|----------------------|
| 10 000                  | 100 pmol; 6 × 10 <sup>13</sup> molecules   | 10 µg  | IgG                  |
| 50 000                  | 20 pmol; 1.2 × 10 <sup>13</sup> molecules  | 50 µg  | IgM                  |
| 100 000                 | 10 pmol; 6.0 × 10 <sup>12</sup> molecules  | 100 µg | IgA                  |
| 150 000                 | 6.7 pmol; 4.0 × 10 <sup>12</sup> molecules | 150 µg | Protein A            |
|                         |  |        | Avidin               |
|                         |  |        | Streptavidin         |
|                         |  |        | Bovine serum albumin |
| 1 kb of DNA             | = 333 amino acids of coding capacity       |        |                      |
|                         | = 37 000 g/mol                             |        |                      |
| 270 bp DNA              | = 10 000 g/mol                             |        |                      |
| 1.35 kb DNA             | = 50 000 g/mol                             |        |                      |
| 2.70 kb DNA             | = 100 000 g/mol                            |        |                      |
| Average molecular weigh | nt of an amino acid = 120 g/mol.           |        |                      |

## **Column pressures**

| A <sub>280</sub> for 1 mg/mL | The maximum pressure drop over the packed bed refers to the pressure above which t |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1.35                         | column contents might begin to compress.   |
| 1.20                         | Pressure units may be expressed in megaPascal (MPa), bar, or pounds per square     |
| 1.30                         | inch (psi) and can be converted as follows: 1 MPa = 10 bar = 145 psi               |
| 0.17                         |  |
| 1.50                         |  |
| 3.40                         |  |
| 0.70                         |  |
|                              |  |



## Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

## Appendix 6 Table of amino acids



# tography

### Table A6.1. List of amino acids

|               |                   |                    |  |  |                | Middle unit r                                  | esidue (-H <sub>2</sub> 0) | Charge at     | Hydrophobic | Uncharged | Hydrophilic |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|--|--|----------------|--|----------------------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Amino acid    | Three-letter code | Single-letter code | Structure  | Formula  | M <sub>r</sub> | Formula  | M <sub>r</sub>             | pH 6.0 to 7.0 | (nonpolar)  | (polar)   | (polar)     |
| Alanine       | Ala               | А                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N CH <sub>3</sub>   | C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>  | 89.1           | $C_{3}H_{5}NO$                                 | 71.1                       | Neutral       | •           |           |             |
| Arginine      | Arg               | R                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> NHC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N | $C_{6}H_{14}N_{4}O_{2}$                        | 174.2          | $C_{6}H_{12}N_{4}O$                            | 156.2                      | Basic (+ve)   |             |           | •           |
| Asparagine    | Asn               | Ν                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N CH <sub>2</sub> CONH <sub>2</sub>                                     | $C_4H_8N_2O_3$                                 | 132.1          | $C_4H_6N_2O_2$                                 | 114.1                      | Neutral       |             | •         |             |
| Aspartic acid | Asp               | D                  | ноос<br>Н <sub>2</sub> N сн <sub>2</sub> соон  | C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>4</sub>  | 133.1          | $C_4H_5NO_3$                                   | 115.1                      | Acidic(-ve)   |             |           | •           |
| Cysteine      | Cys               | С                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> SH  | $C_3H_7NO_2S$                                  | 121.2          | $C_{3}H_{5}NOS$                                | 103.2                      | Neutral       |             | •         |             |
| Glutamic acid | Glu               | E                  | ноос<br>Н <sub>2</sub> N сн <sub>2</sub> сн <sub>2</sub> соон                                  | $C_5H_9NO_4$                                   | 147.1          | C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>  | 129.1                      | Acidic (-ve)  |             |           | •           |
| Glutamine     | GIn               | Q                  | HOOC<br>$H_2CH_2CH_2CONH_2$<br>$H_2N$  | $C_{5}H_{10}N_{2}O_{3}$                        | 146.1          | $C_5H_8N_2O_2$                                 | 128.1                      | Neutral       |             | •         |             |
| Glycine       | Gly               | G                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N   | $C_2H_5NO_2$                                   | 75.1           | C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>3</sub> NO               | 57.1                       | Neutral       |             | •         |             |
| Histidine     | His               | Н                  | HOOC<br>$H_2N$ $CH_2$ $N$ $NH$   | $C_6H_9N_3O_2$                                 | 155.2          | C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>7</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O | 137.2                      | Basic (+ve)   |             |           | •           |
| Isoleucine    | lle               | I                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub>                   | C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>13</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> | 131.2          | C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO              | 113.2                      | Neutral       | •           |           |             |
| Leucine       | Leu               | L                  | HOOC<br>$H_2CH$<br>$H_2N$<br>$CH_3$<br>$CH_3$  | C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>13</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> | 131.2          | C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO              | 113.2                      | Neutral       | •           |           |             |
| Lysine        | Lys               | К                  | $\xrightarrow{HOOC} CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$ $H_2N$   | $C_{6}H_{14}N_{2}O_{2}$                        | 146.2          | $C_{6}H_{12}N_{2}O$                            | 128.2                      | Basic (+ve)   |             |           | •           |
| Methionine    | Met               | М                  | HOOC<br>$H_2CH_2CH_3CH_3$  | $C_5H_{11}NO_2S$                               | 149.2          | $C_{5}H_{9}NOS$                                | 131.2                      | Neutral       | •           |           |             |
| Phenylalanine | Phe               | F                  | HOOC<br>$H_2N$ $CH_2$  | C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> | 165.2          | C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO               | 147.2                      | Neutral       | •           |           |             |

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

|            |                   |                    |   |  | Middle unit residue (-H <sub>2</sub> 0) |  | esidue (-H <sub>2</sub> 0) | Charge at     | Hydrophobic | Uncharged | Hydrophilic |
|------------|-------------------|--------------------|---|--|---|--|----------------------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Amino acid | Three-letter code | Single-letter code | Structure   | Formula  | M <sub>r</sub>                          | Formula  | M <sub>r</sub>             | pH 6.0 to 7.0 | (nonpolar)  | (polar)   | (polar)     |
| Proline    | Pro               | Ρ                  | $HOOC \longrightarrow NH$   | C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>  | 115.1                                   | C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO                 | 97.1                       | Neutral       | ٠           |           |             |
| Serine     | Ser               | S                  | ноос<br>сн <sub>2</sub> он  | C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>3</sub>  | 105.1                                   | C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>    | 87.1                       | Neutral       |             | •         |             |
| Threonine  | Thr               | Т                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N CHCH <sub>3</sub><br>H <sub>2</sub> N OH | $C_4H_9NO_3$                                   | 119.1                                   | C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>7</sub> NO <sub>2</sub>    | 101.1                      | Neutral       |             | •         |             |
| Tryptophan | Trp               | W                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N CH <sub>2</sub> NH                       | $C_{11}H_{12}N_{2}O_{2}$                       | 204.2                                   | C <sub>11</sub> H <sub>10</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O | 186.2                      | Neutral       | ٠           |           |             |
| Tyrosine   | Tyr               | Y                  | ноос<br><sub>H2</sub> N сн <sub>2</sub> -Он                       | C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>3</sub> | 181.2                                   | $C_9H_9NO_2$                                     | 163.2                      | Neutral       |             | ٠         |             |
| Valine     | Val               | V                  | HOOC<br>H <sub>2</sub> N CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>        | C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>11</sub> NO <sub>2</sub> | 117.1                                   | C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> NO                 | 99.1                       | Neutral       | •           |           |             |

## Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chrom tography

## Appendix 7 Analytical assays

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

Analytical assays are essential to follow the progress of purification. They are used to assess the eff step, in terms of yield, biological activity, recovery and to help during optimization of experimental importance of a reliable assay for the target molecule cannot be over-emphasized.



When testing chromatographic fractions, ensure that the buffers used for purification do n the assay.

## **Total protein determination**

Lowry or Bradford assays are standard methods to determine the total protein content. The Bradford suited to samples with high lipid content that may interfere with the Lowry assay.

## **SDS-PAGE** analysis

The general steps in SDS-PAGE analysis are summarized below:

- 1. Prepare samples by mixing with equal volumes of 2× SDS loading buffer.
- 2. Vortex briefly and heat for 5 min at 90°C to 100°C.
- 3. Load the samples and, optionally, a MW marker onto an SDS-polyacrylamide gel.
- 4. Run the gel.
- 5. Stain the gel with Coomassie<sup>™</sup> Blue or silver stain.

## **Purity determination**

Purity is most often estimated by SDS-PAGE. Alternatively, SEC, isoelectric focusing, capillary electrophoresis, RPC, or mass spectrometry may be used.



The percentage of acrylamide in the SDS-gel should be selected according to the expected molecular weight of the protein of interest (see Table A7.1).

| ffectiveness of each      | Table A7.1. Separation ranges of polyacrylamide gels |                                 |                   |  |  |  |
|---------------------------|--|---------------------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|
| l conditions. The         | Acrylamide in resol                                  | Acrylamide in resolving gel (%) |                   |  |  |  |
|                           | Single percentage:                                   | 5%                              | 36 000 to 200 000 |  |  |  |
| not interfere with        |  | 7.5%                            | 24 000 to 200 000 |  |  |  |
|                           |  | 10%                             | 14 000 to 200 000 |  |  |  |
|                           |  | 12.5%                           | 14 000 to 100 000 |  |  |  |
|                           |  | 15%                             | 14 000 to 60 000* |  |  |  |
| ord assay is particularly | Gradient:  | 5% to 15%                       | 14 000 to 200 000 |  |  |  |
|                           |  | 5% to 20%                       | 10 000 to 200 000 |  |  |  |
|                           |  | 10% to 20%                      | 10 000 to 150 000 |  |  |  |
|                           |  |                                 |                   |  |  |  |

\* The larger proteins do not move significantly into the gel.

 $\overline{\mathbf{r}}$ 

For information and advice on electrophoresis techniques, see <u>2-D</u> Electrophoresis Principles and Methods Handbook from Cytiva.

The gel is usually stained after electrophoresis to make the protein bands visible by, for example, Coomassie<sup>™</sup> Blue or silver staining. Another way of making protein visible is by prelabeling the proteins by fluorescent dye (Amersham<sup>™</sup> Cy<sup>™</sup>5 dye reagent) before loading the sample in the gel. By doing in this way the gel image can be acquired directly after finished electrophoresis by laser scanner or CCD camera and the result is obtained much faster. This workflow is outlined below.

## Protein prelabeling with CyDye<sup>™</sup> fluorescent dyes

- 1. Prepare samples by prelabeling with Amersham<sup>™</sup> Western blotting Cy<sup>™</sup>5 dye reagent.
- 2. Vortex briefly and heat for 5 min at 90°C to 100°C.
- 3. Load the samples and, optionally, a MW marker onto an SDS-polyacrylamide gel.
- 4. Run the gel and proceed directly to image capture.







## **Functional assays**

Immunospecific interactions have enabled the development of many alternative assay systems for the assessment of active concentration of target molecules.

- Western blot analysis is used when the sensitivity of SDS-PAGE with Coomassie<sup>™</sup> Blue or silver staining is insufficient.
  - 1. Separate the protein samples by SDS-PAGE.
  - 2. Transfer the separated proteins from the gel to an appropriate membrane, depending on the choice of detection reagents. Protran<sup>™</sup> (NC) or Hybond<sup>™</sup> P (PVDF) membranes are recommended for chemiluminescent detection using ECL<sup>™</sup> start, ECL<sup>™</sup>, ECL Prime, or ECL Select<sup>™</sup> Western blotting detection reagents. Protran<sup>™</sup> Premium (NC) or Hybond<sup>™</sup> LFP (PVDF) membranes are recommended for fluorescent detection with ECL Plex<sup>™</sup> Western blotting detection system.
  - 3. Develop the membrane with the appropriate specified reagents.

Electrophoresis and protein transfer may be accomplished using a variety of equipment and reagents. For further details, refer to the 2-D Electrophoresis Principles and Methods Handbook from Cytiva.

- ELISAs are used as activity assays.
- Functional assays using the phenomenon of surface plasmon resonance to detect immunospecific interactions. Biacore<sup>™</sup> surface plasmon resonance systems enable the label-free determination of active concentration, epitope mapping, and studies of reaction kinetics.

## **Detection and assay of tagged proteins**

SDS-PAGE, Western blotting, and ELISAs can also be applied to the detection and assay of genetically engineered molecules to which a specific tag has been attached. In some cases, an assay based on the properties associated with the tag itself can be developed, for example, the GST Detection Module for enzymatic detection and of GST-tagged proteins. Further details on the detection and quantitation of GST- and His tagged proteins, see Affinity Chromatography, Vol. 2: Tagged proteins and the GST Gene Fusion System Handbook.

# tography

## Appendix 8 Storage

## ydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

## **Storage of biological samples**

Overall recommendations are provided for your convenience. You should consider the properties of the specific sample and its intended use before following any of these recommendations.

## Recommendations

- Add stabilizing agents, if essential. Stabilizing agents are often required for storage of purified proteins.
- Serum, culture supernatants and ascitic fluid should be kept frozen at -20° C or -70° C, in small aliquots.
- Avoid repeated freeze/thawing or freeze drying/redissolving that may reduce biological activity.
- Avoid conditions close to stability limits, for example, pH or salt concentrations, reducing or chelating agents.
- Keep refrigerated at 4° C in a closed vessel to minimize bacterial growth and protease activity.
- Sodium azide can interfere with many coupling methods and some biological assays and can be a health hazard. You can remove using a desalting column (see Desalting and exchange section in Appendix 1).

## **Overall recommendations for purified proteins**

- η Γ Γ

l Πλ

• Store as a precipitate in high concentration of ammonium sulfate, for example, 4.0 M.

• Freeze in 50% glycerol, especially suitable for enzymes.

• Avoid the use of preserving agents if the product is to be used for a biological assay. Preserving agents should not be added if *in vivo* experiments are to be performed. Instead store samples in small aliquots and keep frozen.

• Sterile filter to prolong storage time.

• Add stabilizing agents, for example, glycerol (5% to 20%), serum albumin (10 mg/mL), ligand (concentration is selected based on concentration of active protein) to help to maintain biological activity. Remember that any additive will reduce the purity of the protein and might need to be removed at a later stage.

• Avoid repeated freeze/thawing or freeze drying/redissolving that may reduce biological activity.

Sodium azide can interfere with many coupling methods and some biological assays. You can remove it with a desalting column (see Desalting and exchange section in Appendix 1).

Cryoproteins are a group of proteins, including some mouse antibodies of the IgG<sub>3</sub> subclass, that should not be stored at 4° C as they precipitate at this temperature. Keep at room temperature in the presence of a preserving agent.





Hydroph tography

## Appendix 9 Column cleaning for HIC resins

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

Correct preparation of samples and buffers and application of a salt-free buffer or distilled water wash at the end of each separation should keep most columns in good condition. However, reduced performance, a slow flow rate, increasing back pressure or complete blockage are all indications that the resins need to be cleaned using more stringent procedures to remove contaminants.



Whenever possible reverse the direction of flow during cleaning so that contaminants do not pass through the entire column length. The number of column volumes and time required for each cleaning step will vary according to the degree of contamination. If the cleaning procedure to remove common contaminants does not restore column performance, change the top filter (when possible) before trying alternative cleaning methods. You should take care changing a filter as this affects the column packing and interfere with your performance.

## **Removal of common contaminants**

The following procedure should be good to remove common contaminants such as precipitated proteins. Note that flow rates may need to be reduced due to the condition of the column and the viscosity of the sample, buffers, or storage solutions.

- 1. Wash with up to four column volumes of 1 M NaOH at the recommended flow rate.
- 2. Wash with at least 3 CV of water or until eluent pH is neutral.
- 3a. To start a new separation: reequilbrate with at least 3 CV of start buffer or until the correct eluent pH is achieved at the recommended flow rate.
- 3b. For storage: wash with at least 3 CV of storage solution. Allow UV baseline to stabilize before storing the column.

## **Removal of lipids, lipoproteins, and hydrophobic proteins**



Organic solvents or detergents may be required to completely remove contaminants of this type. Always check for solvent compatibility in the instructions supplied with the resin or column.



Before using organic solvents, wash the resins with at least 4 CV of distilled water to avoid any salts precipitating on the column. When applying organic solvents or solutions it may be necessary to reduce the flow rate to avoid over-pressuring the column.



# tography

## Alternative 1

- 1. Wash with at least 2 CV of water at the recommended flow rate.
- 2. Wash with at least 4 CV of 70% ethanol or 30% isopropanol at the recommended flow rate.
- 3. Wash with at least 4 CV of distilled water, same flow as step 1.
- 4a. To start a new separation: re-equilibrate with at least 3 CV of start buffer, or until the correct eluent pH is achieved at the recommended flow rate.
- 4b. For storage: wash with at least 5 CV of storage solution. Allow UV baseline to stabilize before storing the column.

## **Alternative 2**

- 1. Wash with up to two column volumes of 0.05% nonionic detergent (e.g., Tween<sup>™</sup>-20) in 1 M acetic acid at the recommended flow rate.
- 2. Wash with at least 5 CV of 70% ethanol (to remove detergent) at the recommended flow rate.
- 3. Wash with at least 4 CV of distilled water (same flow as step 1).
- 4a. To start a new separation: re-equilibrate with at least 3 CV of start buffer, or until the correct eluent pH is achieved at the recommended flow rate.
- 4b. For storage: wash with at least 5 CV of storage solution. Allow UV baseline to stabilize before storing the column.



Use detergents with care as they may bind to the resins thereby reducing binding capacity in subsequent runs.



## Hydroph tography

## Handbooks from Cytiva

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

| Handbooks   | Code number |
|---|-------------|
| Affinity Chromatography - Vol. 1: Antibodies                      | CY13981     |
| Affinity Chromatography - Vol. 2: Tagged Proteins                 | CY13980     |
| Affinity Chromatography - Vol. 3: Specific Groups of Biomolecules | CY13979     |
| Ion Exchange Chromatography Principles and Methods                | CY13983     |
| Multimodal Chromatography Principles and Methods                  | CY14738     |
| Size Exclusion Chromatography Principles and Methods              | CY12707     |
| ÄKTA™ Laboratory-Scale Chromatography Systems                     | CY13989     |
| Cross Flow Filtration Method Handbook                             | CY14739     |
| Design of Experiments in Protein Production and Purification      | CY14782     |
| GST Gene Fusion System  | CY14588     |
| High Throughput Process Development (HTPD) with PreDictor Plates  | CY16051     |
| Purifying Challenging Proteins                                    | CY14791     |
| Strategies for Protein Purification                               | CY13986     |
| Molecular Imaging   | CY14828     |
| Protein sample preparation  | CY14735     |
| 2-D Electrophoresis   | CY14825     |

These handbooks can be downloaded from cytivalifesciences.com/handbooks

## Hydrophobi ō intera 2 ō J nd reve S ed pha ISe 0 hro tography

## Ordering information

# tography

## Hydrophobic interaction chromatography products

Capto™, Capto™ ImpRes, SOURCE™, Sepharose™ High Performance, and Sepharose™ Fast Flow resins are also all available as BioProcess™ resins for large-scale production, *see* cytiva.com for details.

## Capto<sup>™</sup> HIC products

## Screening kits

| Format   | Quantity                  | Product code |
|--|---------------------------|--------------|
| HiTrap™ Capto™ HIC<br>Selection Kit  | 5 × 1 mL                  | 29321087     |
| Kit includes the following<br>Capto <sup>™</sup> HIC resins: Capto <sup>™</sup><br>Phenyl (high sub), Capto <sup>™</sup><br>Phenyl ImpRes, Capto <sup>™</sup> Butyl,<br>Capto <sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes, and<br>Capto <sup>™</sup> Octyl. Prepacked,<br>ready-to-use 1 mL HiTrap <sup>™</sup><br>columns |                           |              |
| PreDictor™ Capto™ HIC  | 6 μL, 4 × 96 well plates  | 29711438     |
| Screening Kit<br>Kit includes the following<br>Capto <sup>™</sup> HIC resins: Capto <sup>™</sup><br>Phenyl (high sub), Capto <sup>™</sup><br>Phenyl ImpRes, Capto <sup>™</sup> Butyl,<br>Capto <sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes, Capto <sup>™</sup><br>Octyl, and Capto <sup>™</sup> Butyl-S                    | 20 μL, 4 × 96 well plates | 29711439     |

## Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl resin

| Format                 | Quantity                  | Product cod |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| Bulk                   | 25 mL                     | 17545901    |
|                        | 100 mL                    | 17545902    |
| HiTrap™ column         | 5 × 1 mL                  | 17545908    |
|                        | 5 × 5 mL                  | 17545909    |
| HiScreen™ column       | 1 × 4.7 mL                | 28992473    |
| PreDictor™ plate       | 6 μL, 4 × 96-well plates  | 17545916    |
|                        | 20 µL, 4 × 96-well plates | 29716137    |
|                        | 50 μL, 4 × 96-well plates | 17545917    |
| PreDictor™ RoboColumn™ | 200 µL, 1 × 8 columns     | 28986097    |
| unit                   | 600 μL, 1 × 8 columns     | 28986183    |
| -                      |                           |             |

## Capto™ Phenyl (high sub) resin

|                        | -                         |              |
|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| Format                 | Quantity                  | Product code |
| Bulk                   | 25 mL                     | 17545101     |
|                        | 100 mL                    | 17545102     |
| HiTrap™ column         | 5 × 1 mL                  | 17545108     |
|                        | 5 × 5 mL                  | 17545109     |
| HiScreen™ column       | 1 × 4.7 mL                | 28992472     |
| PreDictor™ plate       | 6 μL, 4 × 96-well plates  | 17545116     |
|                        | 20 µL, 4 × 96-well plates | 29716136     |
|                        | 50 µL 4 × 96-well plates  | 17545117     |
| PreDictor™ RoboColumn™ | 200 µL, 1 × 8 columns     | 28986088     |
| unit                   | 600 μL, 1 × 8 columns     | 28986182     |

## Capto<sup>™</sup> Octyl resin

| Format                 | Quantity                      | Product code | Format                 | Quantity                  | Product code |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| Bulk                   | 25 mL                         | 17546501     | Bulk                   | 25 mL                     | 17548401     |
|                        | 100 mL                        | 17546502     |                        | 100 mL                    | 17548402     |
| HiTrap™ column         | 5 × 1 mL                      | 17546508     | HiTrap™ column         | 5 × 1 mL                  | 17548411     |
|                        | 5 × 5 mL                      | 17546512     |                        | 5 × 5 mL                  | 17548412     |
| HiScreen™ column       | 1 × 4.7 mL                    | 17546510     | HiScreen™ column       | 1 × 4.7 mL                | 17548410     |
| PreDictor™ plate       | 6 μL, 4 × 96-well plates      | 17546516     | PreDictor™ plate       | 6 μL, 4 × 96-well plates  | 29711440     |
|                        | 20 µL, 4 × 96-well plates     | 29716138     |                        | 20 µL, 4 × 96-well plates | 29711441     |
|                        | 50 $\mu$ L 4 × 96-well plates | 17546517     | PreDictor™ RoboColumn™ | 200 µL, 1 × 8 columns     | 29701638     |
| PreDictor™ RoboColumn™ | 200 µL, 1 × 8 columns         | 29275286     | unit                   | 600 μL, 1 × 8 columns     | 17548441     |
| unit                   | 600 μL, 1 × 8 columns         | 29275287     |                        |                           |              |

## Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl-S resin

| ict code | Format | Quantity | Product code |
|----------|--------|----------|--------------|
| 45901    | Bulk   | 25 mL    | 17549701     |
| 45902    |        | 100 mL   | 17549702     |

## Capto<sup>™</sup> PlasmidSelect resin

| 92473 | Format           | Quantity   | Product code |
|-------|------------------|------------|--------------|
| 45916 | Bulk             | 25 mL      | 17549901     |
| 16137 |                  | 100 mL     | 17549902     |
| 45917 | HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL   | 17549911     |
| 86097 |                  | 5 × 5 mL   | 17549912     |
| 86183 | HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL | 29201790     |

## Capto<sup>™</sup> Phenyl ImpRes resin

## Capto<sup>™</sup> Butyl ImpRes

| Format                         | Quantity                  | Product cod |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| Bulk                           | 25 mL                     | 17371901    |
|                                | 100 mL                    | 17371902    |
| HiTrap™ column                 | 5 × 1 mL                  | 17371911    |
|                                | 5 × 5 mL                  | 17371912    |
| HiScreen™ column               | 1 × 4.7 mL                | 17371910    |
| PreDictor™ Plate               | 6 µL, 4 × 96-well plates  | 29711442    |
|                                | 20 µL, 4 × 96-well plates | 29711443    |
| PreDictor™ RoboColumn™<br>unit | 200 µL, 1 x 8 columns     | 29701637    |
|                                | 600 μL, 1 x 8 columns     | 17371941    |

## **SOURCE™ HIC products**

### SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15PHE

| Format                       | Quantity   | Product code |
|------------------------------|------------|--------------|
| Bulk                         | 200 mL     | 17014702     |
| RESOURCE <sup>™</sup> column | 1 × 1 mL   | 17118601     |
| 4.6/100 PE column            | 1 × 1.7 mL | 17518601     |
|                              |            |              |

### SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15ISO

| Format           | Quantity | Product |
|------------------|----------|---------|
| Bulk             | 200 mL   | 170148  |
| RESOURCE™ column | 1 × 1 mL | 171185  |

| code |
|------|
| 901  |
| 902  |
| 911  |
| 912  |
| 910  |
| 442  |
| 443  |
| 637  |
| 0.44 |

code 802 501



## Sepharose<sup>™</sup> HIC products

## Screening kits

| Format  | Quantity | Product code |
|---|----------|--------------|
| HiTrap™ HIC selection kit   | 7 × 1 mL | 28411007     |
| Kit includes the following<br>resins: Phenyl Sepharose™<br>High Performance, Phenyl |          |              |
| Sepharose <sup>™</sup> 6 Fast Flow (low   |          |              |
| sub), Phenyl Sepharose™ 6<br>Fast Flow (high sub), Butyl                            |          |              |
| Sepharose <sup>™</sup> High Performance,  |          |              |
| Butyl-S Sepharose™ 6 Fast   |          |              |
| Flow, Butyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast   |          |              |
| Flow, Octyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast   |          |              |
| Flow  |          |              |

## Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (high sub) resin

| Format           | Quantity   | Product code |
|------------------|------------|--------------|
| Bulk             | 25 mL      | 17097310     |
|                  | 200 mL     | 17097305     |
| HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL   | 17135501     |
|                  | 5 × 5 mL   | 17519301     |
| HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL | 28926988     |

## Phenyl Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow (low sub) resin

| Format           | Quantity   | Product code |
|------------------|------------|--------------|
| Bulk             | 25 mL      | 17096510     |
|                  | 200 mL     | 17096505     |
| HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL   | 17135301     |
|                  | 5 × 5 mL   | 17519401     |
| HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL | 28926989     |

## Butyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast Flow resin

| Format           | Quantity   | Product code | Format           | Quantity          | Product code |
|------------------|------------|--------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| Bulk             | 25 mL      | 17098010     | Bulk             | 75 mL             | 17108201     |
|                  | 200 mL     | 17098001     | HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL          | 17135101     |
| HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL   | 17135701     |                  | 5 × 5 mL          | 17519501     |
|                  | 5 × 5 mL   | 17519701     | HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL        | 28950516     |
| HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL | 28926984     |                  | o TM Lligh Doufou | -            |

## Octyl Sepharose™ 4 Fast Flow resin

| Format           | Quantity   | Product code |
|------------------|------------|--------------|
| Bulk             | 200 mL     | 17094602     |
| HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL   | 17135901     |
|                  | 5 × 5 mL   | 17519601     |
| HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL | 28926986     |

## Butyl-S Sepharose™ 6 Fast Flow resin

| Format           | Quantity   | Product |
|------------------|------------|---------|
| Bulk             | 200 mL     | 170978  |
| HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL   | 170978  |
| HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL | 289269  |

## Phenyl Sepharose™ High Performance resin

## Butyl Sepharose™ High Performance resin

| Format           | Quantity               | Product code   |
|------------------|------------------------|--|
| Bulk             | 200 mL                 | 17543202   |
| HiTrap™ column   | 5 × 1 mL               | 28411001   |
|                  | 5 × 5 mL               | 28411005   |
| HiScreen™ column | 1 × 4.7 mL             | 28978242   |
|                  | Bulk<br>HiTrap™ column | Bulk 200 mL<br>HiTrap™ column $5 \times 1$ mL<br>$5 \times 5$ mL |

### code

7802

7813

6985

## Hydrophobi 0 3 be pha se tography

## Reversed phase chromatography products

SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC and SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC resins are also available as BioProcess<sup>™</sup> resins for large-scale production, see cytiva.com for details

## SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 15RPC resin

| Format            | Quantity   | Product code |
|-------------------|------------|--------------|
| Bulk              | 10 mL      | 17072720     |
|                   | 200 mL     | 17072702     |
|                   | 500 mL     | 17072703     |
| RESOURCE™ column  | 1 × 1 mL   | 17118101     |
|                   | 1 × 3 mL   | 17118201     |
| 4.6/100 ST column | 1 × 1.7 mL | 17506801     |

## SOURCE<sup>™</sup> 30RPC resin

| Format | Quantity | Product code |
|--------|----------|--------------|
| Bulk   | 10 mL    | 17512020     |
|        | 200 mL   | 17512002     |
|        | 500 mL   | 17512003     |

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

## **Other columns and accessories**

## **Desalting columns**

| Product name                         | Quantity  | Product code |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|--------------|
| HiTrap™ Desalting                    | 5 × 5 mL  | 17140801     |
| HiPrep™ 26/10 Desalting              | 1 × 53 mL | 17508701     |
| HiPrep™ 26/10 Desalting              | 5 × 53 mL | 17508702     |
| Disposable PD-10 Desalting<br>Column | 30        | 17085101     |

## Empty columns

Complete information on the range of Tricorn™ columns is available on Cytiva's website

| Product name           | Quantity | Product code |  |
|------------------------|----------|--------------|--|
| Tricorn™ 5/100 column  | 1        | 28406410     |  |
| Tricorn™ 10/100 column | 1        | 28406415     |  |
| HiScale™ 26/20 column  | 1        | 28964514     |  |
| HiScale™ 26/40 column  | 1        | 28964513     |  |
| HiScale™ 50/20 column  | 1        | 28964445     |  |
| HiScale™ 50/40 column  | 1        | 28964444     |  |

## Accessories and spare parts

For a complete listing, refer to Cytiva's website

| Product name  | Quantity | Product code |
|---|----------|--------------|
| Tricorn™ Packing Equipment 5/50   | 1        | 18115324     |
| Tricorn™ Packing Equipment 5/50 for Tricorn™ 5 mm<br>columns includes: Tricorn™ Packing Connector 5-5,<br>Tricorn™ Glass Tube 5/50, bottom unit, and stop plug.       |          |              |
| Tricorn™ Packing Equipment 10/100   | 1        | 18115325     |
| Tricorn™ Packing Equipment 10/100 for Tricorn 10 mm<br>columns includes: Tricorn™ Packing Connector 10-10,<br>Tricorn™ Glass Tube 10/100, bottom unit, and stop plug. |          |              |
| Tricorn™ Packing Connector 5-5  | 1        | 18115321     |
| Tricorn™ Packing Connector 5-10   | 1        | 18115322     |
| Tricorn™ Packing Connector 10-10  | 1        | 18115323     |
| Packing tube 20, complete for HiScale™ 26   | 1        | 28980383     |
| Packing tube 20, complete for HiScale™ 50   | 1        | 28980251     |

# Hydrophobic interaction and reversed phase chromatography

## cytiva.com/HIC

Cytiva and the Drop logo are trademarks of Global Life Sciences IP Holdings Corporation or an affiliate doing business as Cytiva. ÄKTA, ÄKTA avant, ÄKTA go, ÄKTA pure, ÄKTA start, AxiChrom, BioProcess, Capto, Chromaflow, Cy, Fast Trak, FineLINE, HiPrep, HiScale, HiScreen, HiTrap, PreDictor, Puradisc, RESOURCE, Sephadex, Sepharose, SOURCE, SPARTAN, STREAMLINE, Superdex, Tricorn, UNICORN, and Whatman are trademarks of Global Life Sciences Solutions USA LLC or an affiliate doing business as Cytiva.

Coomassie is a trademark of Thermo Fisher Scientific. RoboColumn is a trademark of Repligen GmbH. Tween is a trademark of Croda Group of Companies. All other thirdparty trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

**CyDye**: The purchase of CyDye products includes a limited license to use the CyDye products for internal research and development but not for any commercial purposes. A license to use the Cy and CyDye trademarks for commercial purposes is subject to a separate license agreement with Cytiva. Commercial use shall include:

- 1. Sale, lease, license or other transfer of the material or any material derived or produced from it.
- 2. Sale, lease, license or other grant of rights to use this material or any material derived or produced from it.
- 3. Use of this material to perform services for a fee for third parties, including contract research and drug screening.

If you require a commercial license to use the Cy and CyDye trademarks, please contact LSlicensing@cytiva.com.

**ECL Prime**: This product or portions thereof is manufactured and sold under license from Cyanagen SrI and is subject of US patent 7,855,287, US Patent 7,803,573, and US Patent 9,040,252, together with other equivalent granted patents and patent applications in other countries.

© 2022 Cytiva

For local office contact information, visit cytiva.com/contact

CY11248-28Sep22-HB

## **O cytiva**

